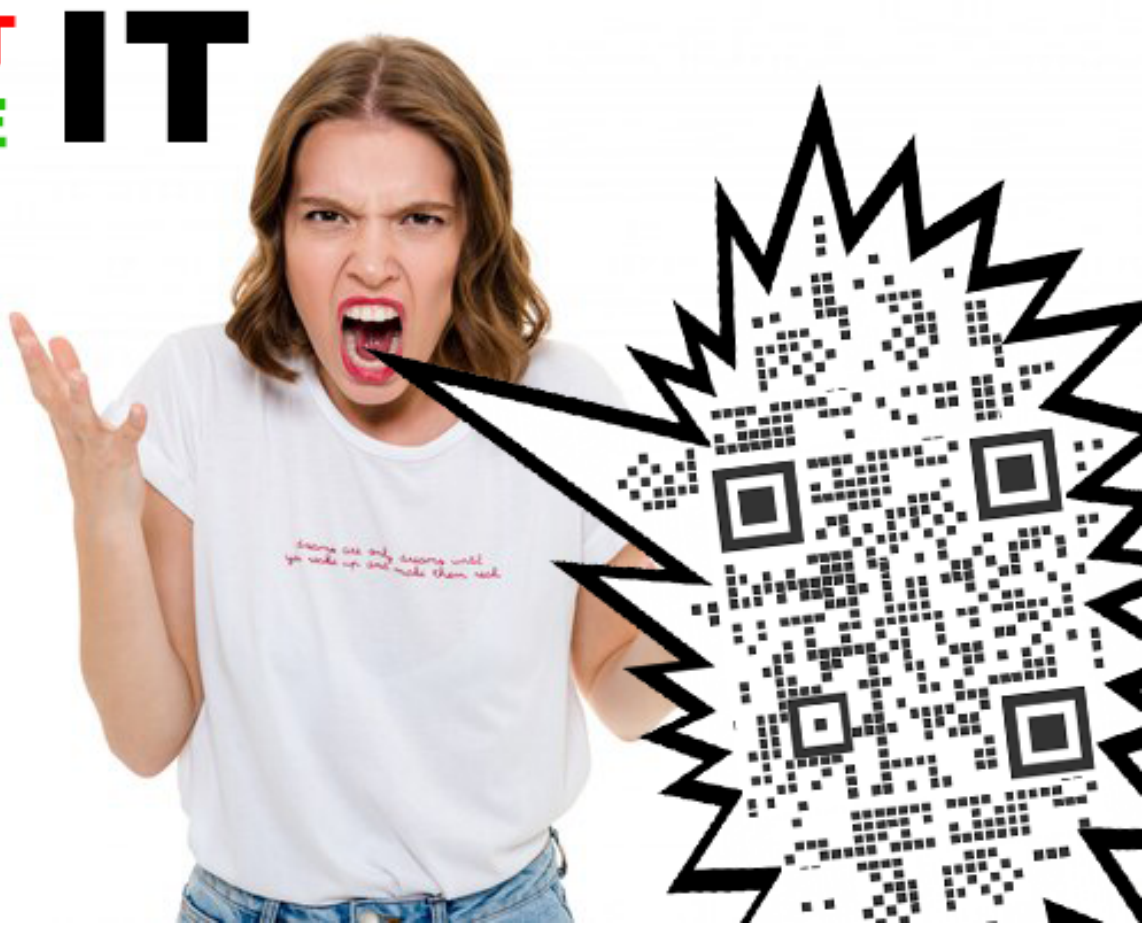
SI CIRC

SHOUT IT
SHARE



SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION
BUREAU OF AMERICAN ETHNOLOGY
BULLETIN 80

MANDAN AND HIDATSA MUSIC

BY
FRANCES DENSMORE

Smithsonian Institution
FEB 1 4 1924
265487
National Museum

WASHINGTON
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
1923

ADDITIONAL COPIES

OF THIS PUBLICATION MAY BE PROCURED FROM
THE SUPERINTENDENT OF DOCUMENTS
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON, D. C.
AT

60 CENTS PER COPY

PURCHASER AGREES NOT TO RESELL OR DISTRIBUTE THIS COPY FOR PROFIT.—PUB. RES. 57, APPROVED MAY 11, 1922

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION,
BUREAU OF AMERICAN ETHNOLOGY,
Washington, D. C., December 15, 1918.

SIR: I have the honor to submit herewith the accompanying manuscript, entitled "Mandan and Hidatsa Music," by Frances Densmore, and to recommend its publication as a bulletin of the Bureau of American Ethnology.

Very respectfully,

J. WALTER FEWKES,
Chief.

Dr. CHARLES D. WALCOTT,
Secretary of the Smithsonian Institution.

FOREWORD

A phase of Indian life hitherto untouched by the present writer is shown in this work. The Mandan and Hidatsa lived in houses which were grouped in permanent villages, their environment differing essentially from that of the Chippewa and Sioux in their camps or the Ute in the fastnesses of the mountains. The music of the latter tribes has been analyzed in previous works,[1] and a comparative statement of results is presented in this volume.

The songs of the Mandan and Hidatsa were recorded on the Fort Berthold Reservation in North Dakota during the summers of 1912 and 1915, an additional trip being made in 1918 to complete the material. This research was suggested by Dr. O. J. Libby, secretary of the State Historical Society of North Dakota, and the first season's work was under the auspices of that society. The subsequent work was under the auspices of the Bureau of American Ethnology.

The writer desires to acknowledge the valued assistance of her two principal interpreters, Mr. James Holding Eagle, a member of the Mandan tribe, who interpreted and translated that language, and Mr. Fred Huber, who interpreted and translated the Hidatsa. Mr. Holding Eagle was born in 1884, received his early education at the Fort Berthold Mission of the Congregational Church, and graduated from the Santee Normal Training School at Santee, Nebr. He is now engaged in missionary work among his people on the Fort Berthold Reservation. Mr. Huber went to Fort Berthold as a musician with the United States Army, and for more than 30 years spent the majority of his time among the Hidatsa. He died before the completion of the present work.

Grateful acknowledgment is made of the assistance rendered by officials of the North Dakota Historical Society, also of the courtesy extended by Dr. C. L. Hall, who for more than 40 years has been a missionary of the Congregational Church on the reservation. The writer desires also to express her appreciation of the assistance cordially given by members of the staff of the Bureau of American Ethnology and the United States National Museum in their respective fields of research.

FRANCES DENSMORE.

[1] Chippewa Music, Bull. 45; Chippewa Music II, Bull. 53; Teton Sioux Music, Bull. 61; and Northern Ute Music, Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn.

CONTENTS

	Page.
List of songs by serial numbers	XI
List of songs by catalogue numbers	XIV
Special signs used in transcription of songs	XVI
Phonetic key	XVII
Names of singers	XVII
Informants who did not record songs	XVIII
Proper names and other native terms	XIX
Characterization of singers	1
Mandan	1
Hidatsa	2
Mandan and Hidatsa Indians	3
Name	3
History and characteristics	3
Dwellings and villages	4
Pottery	5
Burial customs	6
Language	6
Mythology	6
Music	7
Musical instruments	8
Drums	8
Rattles	8
War whistles	9
Courting whistles	9
Flageolets	10
Dealings with the United States Government	11
Mandan and Hidatsa music	12
Introduction	12
Tabulated analyses of 820 Chippewa, Sioux, Ute, Mandan, and Hidatsa songs	16
Analysis of Chippewa, Sioux, Ute, Mandan, and Hidatsa songs	26
Comparative group analyses of Mandan and Hidatsa songs	32
Graphic representation or "plots"	34

SECTION 1. MANDAN

Good Fur Robe	35
The office of Corn Priest	36
The instructions of Good Fur Robe	38

Page.
Societies organized by Good Fur Robe 39
The Goose Women Society 39
Ceremony and meeting of the Goose Women Society 40
The Black Mouth Society 47
Meeting of the Black Mouth Society 48
Customs 52
Singing in the gardens 52
Eagle catching 60
Origin of the custom of eagle catching 64
Legends 80
Origin of the flageolet 80
Origin of the Buffalo Dance Society 84
The moon and the dancers 86
The black-tailed deer 87
Folk tales 89
The turtle who went to war 89
The man who married the birds 90
The coyote and the skunk 92

SECTION 2. MANDAN AND HIDATSA

Mandan women's societies 94
Skunk Society 94
Enemy Society 95
Little River Women Society 97
Origin of the Little River Women Society 97
Ceremony of the Little River Women Society 99
Mandan and Hidatsa men's societies 108
Drums, rattles, and whistles used in the societies 112
Songs of the societies 112
Stone Hammer Society of the Hidatsa 113
Stone Hammer Society wand 115
Stone Hammer Society songs 116
Fox Society songs 121
Young Dog Society song 129
Foolish (or Crazy) Dog Society songs 129
Dog Society songs 133
Buffalo Society songs 138
Horse Society songs 143
War songs 144
Miscellaneous songs 170
Melodic and rhythmic analysis of songs by serial numbers 178
Authorities cited 185
Index 187

ILLUSTRATIONS

PLATES

	Page.
1. Old Dog	2
2. *a*, James Holding Eagle. *b*, Scattered Corn	2
3. *a*, Crow's Heart's earth lodge. *b*, Old Dog's log lodge	2
4. *a*, Entrance to earth lodge. *b*, Entrance to earth lodge, showing scaffold for drying corn	2
5. *a*, Frame of sweat lodge. *b*, Corn-drying scaffold	2
6. *a*, Missouri River at Crow's Heart's landing. *b*, Missouri River, looking west	2
7. Dried squash	6
8. *a*, Camp on Fort Berthold Reservation. *b*, Scaffold burial on Fort Berthold Reservation	6
9. Hand drum. *a*, obverse; *b*, reverse. *c*, Foolish Dog Society rattle. *d*, "Mushroom" rattle	10
10. *a*, Pan playing on whistle. *b*, Whistle and Dog Society rattle	10
11. Plots of Mandan and Hidatsa songs	34
12. Plots of Mandan and Hidatsa songs	34
13. *a*, Goose Women Society drum. *b*, Drumming stick used with Goose Women Society drum	40
14. *a*, Otter Woman. *b*, Bear-on-the-flat. *c*, Pan	40
15. *a*, Yellow Hair. *b*, Sitting Rabbit. *c*, Butterfly	62
16. *a*, Bone used for fastening bait in eagle catching. *b*, *c*, "Kick-ball"	62
17. *a*, Eagle trap (filled by vegetation in foreground). *b*, View from eagle trap	62
18. *a*, Sitting Crow. *b*, Holding Eagle	62
19. *a*, Headdress worn in Buffalo Society. *b*, Stone Hammer Society wand and Foolish Dog Society rattle. *c*, Head of Stone Hammer Society wand	112

TEXT FIGURES

1. Whistle melody	10
2. Plots of Sioux songs compared with Mandan and Hidatsa songs	34
3. Diagram showing movements of men in ceremony of Black Mouth Society	48
4. Flageolet melody	83
5. Plot of song No. 72	141
6. Plot of song No. 92	161

LIST OF SONGS

1. Arranged in Order of Serial Numbers

Songs of the Goose Women Society

Serial No.		Catalogue No.	Page.
1.	The Captive song	808	42
2.	Song of the Goose Women Society (a)	809	43
3.	"My daughter"	810	44
4.	Song of the Corn Priest	812	45
5.	Song of the Goose Women Society (b)	811	46

Songs of the Black Mouth Society

6.	Song to the raven	861	49
7.	"Earth always endures"	859	50
8.	"Enemies are many"	860	50
9.	Going to dance	903	51
10.	Black Mouth Society song	869	52

Garden Songs

11.	"Kill the blackbirds"	877	54
12.	"The corn is my pleasure"	813	54
13.	"I am alone"	814	55
14.	"My lover is dead"	875	56
15.	"My heart aches every day"	878	57
16.	"This is her village"	874	58
17.	Song to the corn	876	59
18.	"The first wife laughs"	906	60

Songs Connected With Eagle Catching

19.	Song of the buffalo	821	70
20.	Song of the black eagle	822	71
21.	Song of the coyote (a)	823	72
22.	Song of the snake	824	73
23.	Song when making the brush shelter	825	74
24.	Song when making the sweat lodge	826	75
25.	Song when making the eagle trap	827	76
26.	Song when preparing the bait	828	77
27.	Song of the little wolverine	829	77
28.	Song of the goose	830	78
29.	Song of the swan	831	79
30.	Song concerning the twine	832	80

Songs Connected With Legends and Folk-Tales

Serial No.		Catalogue No.	Page.
31.	Song of the leader of the herd	838	86
32.	Song of the moon	842	87
33.	Song of the deer	837	88
34.	Song of the turtle who went to war	893	90
35.	Song of the man who married the birds	894	92
36.	Dancing song of the skunk	820	93

Songs of Women's Societies (Mandan)

37.	"He never will return"	807	95
38.	"He stared at me"	819	96
39.	Song of the spirit women	800	101
40.	"The Missouri women"	801	103
41.	Song of the bear	802	104
42.	Song of the shell	803	105
43.	Song of the coyote (b)	804	106
44.	Dancing song of the Little River Women Society	805	106
45.	Song of the Little River Women Society (a)	872	107
46.	Song of the Little River Women Society (b)	873	107

Songs of the Stone Hammer Society (Hidatsa)

47.	"I desire to take you with me"	884	117
48.	"Let us go"	885	118
49.	"Run away"	886	119

Songs of Men's Societies (Mandan and Hidatsa)

Fox Society

50.	"I want to live"	887	120
51.	"Need I be afraid?"	899	121
52.	Fox Society war song (a)	895	122
53.	Fox Society funeral song	890	123
54.	Fox Society war song (b)	850	124
55.	Fox Society serenade	871	125
56.	Fox Society song	867	126
57.	Fox Society love song	868	126

Young Dog Society

58.	"Wake up"	835	127
59.	"Why did you sleep?"	836	128
60.	Young Dog Society serenade	870	129

Foolish Dog Society

61.	"You did it"	843	130
62.	Foolish Dog Society serenade	844	130
63.	"I cannot sleep"	905	131
64.	"It is my own fault"	909	132

Dog Society

65.	"If I go"	852	134
66.	Dog Society serenade (a)	853	135
67.	Dog Society serenade (b)	857	136
68.	"The enemy are like women"	863	137

BUFFALO SOCIETY

Serial No.		Catalogue No.	Page.
69.	Buffalo Society song (a)	854	138
70.	Buffalo Society song (b)	855	139
71.	Buffalo Society song (c)	856	140
72.	Buffalo Society dancing song	849	141
73.	Buffalo Society serenade (a)	845	142
74.	Buffalo Society serenade (b)	904	142

HORSE SOCIETY

75.	Horse Society song (a)	833	143
76.	Horse Society song (b)	834	144

WAR SONGS

77.	Song when organizing a war party	888	146
78.	"Young wolves, do your best"	865	147
79.	Old war song	896	148
80.	War medicine song	891	149
81.	"I will bring the wind"	846	150
82.	"Take me to the Sioux"	848	151
83.	"I will go"	907	152
84.	"Comrades, sleep on"	880	153
85.	"She walks alone"	864	154
86.	Song to renew a warrior's strength	858	155
87.	Woman's scalp dance song	902	155
88.	Butterfly's war song	897	156
89.	Song in praise of generosity	881	157
90.	Victory song	806	158
91.	Song of triumph	815	159
92.	"He holds a knife in his hand"	816	160
93.	"The enemy came as a wolf"	817	161
94.	"I killed three"	818	163
95.	"Disguised as a buffalo"	847	164
96.	"I will pursue him"	851	165
97.	"The hated enemy"	866	166
98.	"The Sioux come"	882	167
99.	"What was it you struck?"	862	168
100.	"I do not fear"	879	168
101.	"You are foolish"	908	169
102.	War song	889	170

MISCELLANEOUS SONGS

103.	"Whose track is it?"	982	171
104.	Song to a little child	901	172
105.	Song of an elk dream	883	173
106.	"We made fire"	898	174
107.	Song of derision	839	175
108.	"The kettle is burning"	840	176
109.	"The youngest wife of the chief"	841	177
110.	Song on the roof of the lodge	900	178

2. Arranged in Order of Catalogue Numbers

Catalogue No.	Title of song	Name of singer	Serial No.	Page
800	Song of the spirit women	Scattered Corn	39	101
801	"The Missouri women"	do	40	103
802	Song of the bear	do	41	104
803	Song of the shell	do	42	105
804	Song of the coyote (b)	do	43	106
805	Dancing song of the Little River Women Society.	do	44	106
806	Victory song	do	90	158
807	"He never will return"	do	37	95
808	The captive song	do	1	42
809	Song of the Goose Women Society (a)	do	2	43
810	"My daughter"	do	3	44
811	Song of the Goose Women Society (b)	do	5	46
812	Song of the Corn Priest	do	4	45
813	"The corn is my pleasure"	do	12	54
814	"I am alone"	do	13	55
815	Song of triumph	do	91	159
816	"He holds a knife in his hand"	do	92	160
817	"The enemy came as a wolf"	do	93	161
818	"I killed three"	do	94	163
819	"He stared at me"	do	38	96
820	Dancing song of the skunk	do	36	93
821	Song of the buffalo	Ben Benson	19	70
822	Song of the black eagle	do	20	71
823	Song of the coyote (a)	do	21	72
824	Song of the snake	do	22	73
825	Song when making the brush shelter	do	23	74
826	Song when making the sweat lodge	do	24	75
827	Song when making the eagle trap	do	25	76
828	Song when preparing the bait	do	26	77
829	Song of the little wolverine	do	27	77
830	Song of the goose	do	28	78
831	Song of the swan	do	29	79
832	Song concerning the twine	do	30	80
833	Horse Society song (a)	do	75	143
834	Horse Society song (b)	do	76	144
835	"Wake up"	do	58	127
836	"Why did you sleep?"	do	59	128
837	Song of the deer	Bear-on-the-flat	33	88
838	Song of the leader of the herd	do	31	86

Catalogue No.	Title of song	Name of singer	Serial No.	Page
839	Song of derision	Bear-on-the-flat	107	175
840	"The kettle is burning"	do	108	176
841	"The youngest wife of the chief"	do	109	177
842	Song of the moon	do	32	87
843	"You did it"	do	61	130
844	Foolish Dog Society serenade	do	62	130
845	Buffalo Society serenade (a)	do	73	142
846	"I will bring the wind"	do	81	150
847	"Disguised as a buffalo"	do	95	164
848	"Take me to the Sioux"	do	82	151
849	Buffalo Society dancing song	do	72	141
850	Fox Society war song (b)	Holding Eagle	54	124
851	"I will pursue him"	do	96	165
852	"If I go"	do	65	134
853	Dog Society serenade (a)	do	66	135
854	Buffalo Society song (a)	do	69	138
855	Buffalo Society song (b)	do	70	139
856	Buffalo Society song (c)	do	71	140
857	Dog Society serenade (b)	do	67	136
858	Song to renew a warrior's strength	do	86	155
859	"Earth always endures"	Wounded Face	7	50
860	"Enemies are many"	do	8	50
861	Song to the raven	do	6	49
862	"What was it you struck?"	Crow's Heart	99	168
863	"The enemy are like women"	Wounded Face	68	137
864	"She walks alone"	do	85	154
865	"Young wolves, do your best"	do	78	147
866	"The hated enemy"	do	97	166
867	Fox Society song	Sitting Rabbit	56	126
868	Fox Society love song	do	57	126
869	Black Mouth Society song	do	10	52
870	Young Dog Society serenade	do	60	129
871	Fox Society serenade	do	55	125
872	Song of the Little River Women Society (a)	do	45	107
873	Song of the Little River Women Society (b)	do	46	107
874	"This is her village"	Otter Woman	16	58
875	"My lover is dead"	do	14	56
876	Song to the corn	do	17	59
877	"Kill the blackbirds"	do	11	54
878	"My heart aches every day"	do	15	57
879	"I do not fear"	Crow's Heart	100	168
880	"Comrades, sleep on"	do	84	153

Catalogue No.	Title of song	Name of singer	Serial No.	Page
881	Song in praise of generosity	Crow's Heart	89	157
882	"The Sioux come"	do	98	167
883	Song of an elk dream	do	105	173
884	"I desire to take you with me"	Pan	47	117
885	"Let us go"	do	48	118
886	"Run away"	do	49	119
887	"I want to live"	do	50	120
888	Song when organizing a war party	Old Dog	77	146
889	War song	do	102	170
890	Fox Society funeral song	do	53	123
891	War medicine song	do	80	149
892	"Whose track is it?"	Wolf Head	103	171
893	Song of the turtle who went to war	do	34	90
894	Song of the man who married the birds	do	35	92
895	Fox Society war song (a)	do	52	122
896	Old war song	Butterfly	79	148
897	Butterfly's war song	do	88	156
898	"We made fire"	do	106	174
899	"Need I be afraid?"	Good Bear	51	121
900	Song on the roof of the lodge	do	110	178
901	Song to a little child	Leading One	104	172
902	Woman's scalp dance song	do	87	155
903	Going to dance	Little Crow	9	51
904	Buffalo Society serenade (b)	do	74	142
905	"I can not sleep"	Little Crow and wife.	63	131
906	"The first wife laughs"	Yellow Hair	18	60
907	"I will go"	Wolf Ghost	83	152
908	"You are foolish"	Harry Eaton	101	169
909	"It is my own fault"	James Driver	64	132

SPECIAL SIGNS USED IN TRANSCRIPTIONS OF SONGS

These signs are intended simply as aids to the student in becoming acquainted with the songs. They should be understood as supplementary to the descriptive analysis rather than a part of the musical notation.

+ placed above a note shows that the tone was sung slightly higher than the indicated pitch. In many instances the tones designated by this and the following sign were "unfocused tones," or were tones whose intonation varied in the several renditions of the song.

The intonation of these tones was not such as to suggest the intentional use of "fractional intervals" by the singer.

— placed above a note shows that the tone was sung slightly lower than the indicated pitch.

(placed above a note shows that the tone was prolonged slightly beyond the indicated time. This and the following sign are used only when the deviation from strict time is less than half the time unit of the song and appears to be unimportant. In many instances the duration of the tones thus marked is variable in the several renditions of the song.

) placed above a note shows that the tone was given slightly less than the indicated time.

⌐¬ placed above a series of notes indicates that these tones constitute a rhythmic unit. (See footnote to Table 19.)

PHONETIC KEY

Vowels have the Continental pronunciation—

a as in father
i as in marine
ĭ as in writ
e as in they
ĕ as in net
o as in note
u as in rule
û as in but

Consonants have the usual sounds except—

ṡ is pronounced sh
ḣ represents a strong guttural resembling the Arabic *ghain.*
ġ represents a deep sonant guttural resembling the Arabic *kha.*

NAMES OF SINGERS

It should be understood, in connection with the following lists, that Mandan is practically an unwritten language and that Hidatsa varies as spoken by different individuals; words belonging to one tribe are also used by the other tribe to some extent. The Mandan words and terms herewith presented were written by James Holding Eagle (pl. 2, *a*), the son of one of the few remaining full-blood Mandans. He is the only Mandan who can write his own language to any extent and probably speaks it more correctly than anyone else who can understand English. It was the language of his home when he was a child and he learned at that time what is known as the "old Mandan." The spelling of the Hidatsa words is that given by Mr. Fred Huber, the writer's principal Hidatsa interpreter. Work

by interpreters employed in 1912 was revised by Mr. Huber in 1915 in order to secure uniformity, especially in the use of the letters *d*, *r*, *l*, and *n*. Mr. Huber died March 13, 1918, and a limited number of words were supplied by other interpreters in the summer of that year.

MANDAN

Common name	Mandan name	Translation	Number of songs
Mrs. Holding Eagle	Wo′pitĕ	Scattered Corn	21
Ben Benson	Maro′hipa	Buffalo Bull Head	16
Flat Bear	Ob′śita′mato	Bear on the Flat	13
Wounded Face [1]	Paü′	Wounded Face	7
Mrs. Little Crow [2]	Bĕ′hitakĕ	Otter Woman	5
Crow's Heart	Ke′kana′tka	Crow's Heart	6
Sitting Rabbit	Ma′hitikikana′ka	Sitting Rabbit	7
Little Crow [3]	Ke′kaha′mahe	Little Crow	2
Wolf Head [4]	Ha′rĕtu′pa	Wolf Head	4
Wolf Ghost	Ha′rĕtunu′higĕ	Wolf Ghost	1

HIDATSA

Holding Eagle [5]	Ma′isuïak′śiś	Holding Eagle	9
Old Dog	Ma′śukati′aś	Old Dog	4
Butterfly [6]	Apaü′gûś	White Clay Nose	3
Pan [7]	Matsi′wiruś	Pine Wood	4
Good Bear [8]	Nahpi′tsitsakiś	Good Bear	2
Yellow Hair [9]	A′ratsi′riś	Yellow Hair	2
Mrs. Crow's Heart	A′koätas	Leading One	2
Harry Eaton	Iś′tanuwe′tsaś	One Eye	1
James Driver	Na′kiüś	Driver	1

[1] Died January 29, 1921.
[2] Died October 15, 1921.
[3] Died June 10, 1913. Recorded one additional song with his wife, Otter Woman.
[4] Died January 1, 1922.
[5] Died March 9, 1918.
[6] Died January 27, 1916.
[7] Died August 11, 1918.
[8] Died July 15, 1918.
[9] Died January 3, 1917.

INFORMANTS WHO DID NOT RECORD SONGS

MANDAN

Common name	Mandan name	Translation
Sitting Crow	Ke′kamaäkanu′ka	Sitting Crow.
Water Chief [1]	Mi′nakinuma′ksi	Water Chief.

[1] Died July 20, 1917.

HIDATSA

Buffalo Paunch [2]	Ki'dapi'his	Buffalo Bull Paunch.
Dancing Bull [3]	Ki'dapi'madi'šiš	Dancing Buffalo Bull.
Joseph Packineau		

[2] Died November 8, 1918.
[3] Died January 29, 1918.

PROPER NAMES AND OTHER NATIVE TERMS

Mandan

Good Fur Robe.....Mi'hiši'
Head Rattle.....Pago'šinanda
Rawhide Loop.....Waru'paha'guskĕ
Swinging Corn.....Ka'hohĕ
Moves Slowly.....Ihe'dami
Iron Eyes.....Mista'wadu'ša
Running Rabbit.....Ma'hitiptĕ'hĕ
Black Wolf.....Ha'rĕtasi

Hidatsa

One Buffalo.....Wedok'mahana
Elk Woman.....Ma'rokawi'a

Mandan and Hidatsa Equivalents (not Appearing in the Text)

MANDAN SOCIETIES AMONG THE WOMEN

Society.....O'hate
Goose Women Society.....Mi'ha o'hate
Skunk Society.....Šun'hite o'hate
Enemy Society.....Wi'dami o'hate
Little River Women Society.....Paša'mi o'hate

MANDAN SOCIETIES AMONG THE MEN

White Society.....So'hita o'hate
Fox Society.....O'ha o'hate (also given as I'hokaï'ke o'hate)
Young Dog Society.....Mi'nisinik o'hate
Foolish Dog Society.....Mi'niso'hka o'hate
Dog Society.....Mi'nis o'hate
Black Mouth Society.....I'apši'ade o'hate
Buffalo Society.....Paša'sa o'hate
Coarse Hair Society.....

HIDATSA SOCIETIES AMONG THE MEN

Society (general term).....Bû'dawani'di
Notched Stick Society..... (?)
Stone Hammer Society.....Mi'i maü'paki
Fox Society.....I'hohiga (also given as I'hukiši)
Lumpwood Society.....Mi'dahi'ši
Crazy Dog Society.....Mu'sugawana'he
Dog Society.....Mu'šugaï'hka (intended, or wanted, to be a dog)

Blackmouth.....I'išipi'he (i'i, mouth, šipi'he, black)
Buffalo Society.....Ki'dapi
Half cut Society.....Tsu'ta (half) giragu'ga (shaved, or cut)
Bad Ear Society.....Ako'hanitsi

Names of Musical Instruments

	Mandan	Hidatsa
Drum	Da'mami'hĕ	Mada'haliki
Large drum	Da'mami'hĕ	Mada'haliki ikti'a
Small drum	Da'mami'hĕ	Mada'haliki kariš'ta
Rattle	I'na	Ha'bowa
"Mushroom rattle"	I'nupši'ka	(not used by Hidatsa)
Whistle	Ti'koska	Mi'daïa'kosi
Flageolet	I'wûkû	Mi'daïa'kotse ("singing whistle")

MANDAN AND HIDATSA MUSIC

By Frances Densmore

CHARACTERIZATION OF SINGERS

Mandan

The group of Mandan singers and informants comprised practically all the full-blood Mandans living on the reservation when the material was collected. They were persons of strong individuality and upright character. None were less than 50 years of age and a majority were probably more than 65 years old at the time. Little Crow and Water Chief died before the field work was completed. The only one of the number who spoke enough English to carry on a meager conversation was Ben Benson, and he required an interpreter when giving his information concerning tribal customs.

What may be regarded as the oldest and most valuable material was given by Scattered Corn (pl. 2, *b*), daughter of Moves Slowly, the last corn priest of the Mandan, who died in 1904. He is said to have been "the last of a line of 34 priests whose names are kept in a pictographic record, with their ages, which average between 60 and 70 years."[1] This gave authority to her statements connected with the corn customs.

Little Crow, who recorded songs in 1912 and died the following year, was an aged and highly honored member of the tribe. Wounded Face is a fine type of the old Indian in his character and bearing. He appears to have acted as an informant to all who have studied the customs of his tribe. Ben Benson is a much younger man who has filled with credit the office of Indian policeman and taken other responsibilities in connection with his people. Crow's Heart is prominent in the life of the reservation and represents an entirely different type from the other singers. That he might be termed "a man of affairs" is shown by the following incidents. The Mandan and Hidatsa village at Fort Berthold was abandoned in 1887 and the Indians subsequently were given allotments, the Mandans being located on the western side of the Mis-

[1] Will and Hyde. Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri, p. 268.

souri River and most of the Hidatsa on the eastern side, where the agency is located. Crow's Heart's land was on the shore of the Missouri River, making it accessible both by water and land. There he built an earth lodge of the old type (pl. 3, *a*), having no windows and with a corn-drying scaffold over the door (pl. 4).[2] He built a comfortable log house for himself and later a two-story house for his son, who is a successful cattle raiser. Near his group of buildings he erected a "cedar post" with a paling around it, similar to that in the Mandan section of the Fort Berthold village (see p. 5). There is an excellent camping ground at this point, and "Crow's Heart's place" became a kind of communal center for the Mandans. Many feasts and gatherings were held in his earth lodge, one of which was attended by the writer, who was afterwards taken across the river by Crow's Heart in his "bull boat," or round hide boat of the old type. Many travelers, as well as the Indians, have been taken across in this manner, so that the location is known as "Crow's Heart's Landing," or "Crow's Heart's Ferry," and from this business he has acquired a considerable income. The site is shown in Plate 6, *a*.

Hidatsa

This group of singers comprised a wider range of ages than the group of Mandans. Butterfly was probably the oldest Hidatsa singer; Good Bear was highly respected and for many years was judge in the agency court of Indian offenses; and Holding Eagle was a prominent member of the tribe. These three died before the present work was completed. Pan has adapted himself to the white man's ways and is an industrious farmer. Old Dog (pl. 1) has a log "council house" (pl. 3, *b*) near his dwelling, which serves as a communal center for the Hidatsa of the vicinity, much as Crow's Heart's does for the Mandans, though the two tribes mingle freely in these gatherings. Old Dog's house is on the eastern side of the Missouri River and only a few miles from the agency. The group consists of several dwellings and a sweat lodge (pl. 5, *a*). In construction it differs from Crow's Heart's and resembles the dance houses of the Sioux and Chippewa, being built of logs laid in horizontal rows and plastered with mud; it also has two or three small windows with glass panes. James Driver was the youngest Hidatsa whose songs were recorded. He is representative of the present generation of Indians who sing a type of song different from the old melodies of the tribe.

[2] The woman seated on the ground is softening a hide by drawing it back and forth across a dull scythe fastened to the post.

OLD DOG

a. James Holding Eagle

b. Scattered Corn

a. Crow's Heart's earth lodge

b. Old Dog's log lodge

a. Entrance to earth lodge

b. Entrance to earth lodge, showing scaffold for drying corn

a. Frame of sweat lodge

b. Corn-drying scaffold

a. Missouri River at Crow's Heart's Landing. (Crow's Heart's earth lodge and log dwelling at right.)

b. Missouri River, looking west.

MANDAN AND HIDATSA INDIANS

Name

MANDAN.—The origin of this name is not fully established, though many hold the opinion that it is a corruption of the Dakota word "Miwatani," which, it is said, was applied to these people by the Sioux. Matthews states that "Previous to 1837, they called themselves simply Numakaki, *i. e.*, *People*, *Men*. They sometimes spoke of themselves and the Minnetarees together as Núweta, *Ourselves*. A large band of their tribe was called Siposka-numakaki, *Prairie-hen People*, or *Grouse Men*."[3] La Verendrye in his journal (1738–39), speaks of "the Mandans, who were formerly called Ouachipouanne."[4]

HIDATSA.—"The name Hidatsa, by which they now call themselves, has been said, with doubtful authority, to mean 'willows,' and is stated by Matthews to have been originally the name only of a principal village of the tribe in their old home on Knife r. . . . By the Mandans they are known as Minitari, signifying 'they crossed the water,' traditionally said to refer to their having crossed the Missouri r. from the E. . . . The Crows call them Amashi, 'earth lodges.'"[5]

History and Characteristics

MANDAN.—This Siouan tribe occupied an important strategic position on the northern Missouri River (pl. 6, *b*). They were visited by Sieur de la Verendrye in 1738 and later by Maximilian, Lewis and Clark, Catlin, and other explorers, who recorded their impressions of the tribes and its customs. While related to the tribes immediately to the south and west (the Dakota and Crow) in language, the Mandan differed from them in habits and type of dwelling.

Traditions concerning the history of these people are scanty, but "the fact that when first encountered by the whites they relied to some extent on agriculture as a means of subsistence would seem to justify the opinion that they were, at some time past, in a region where agriculture was practiced."[6] According to Catlin, the Mandan were "very interesting and pleasing people in their personal appearance and manners." He states further that "They are handsome, straight, and elegant in their forms—not tall, but quick and graceful; easy and polite in their manners, neat in their persons, and beautifully

[3] Matthews, Ethnography of the Hidatsa.
[4] La Verendrye's Journal, in Report on Canadian Archives, 1889, p. 5.
[5] Handbook Amer. Inds., pt. 1, p. 547.
[6] Handbook Amer. Inds., pt. 1, art. *Mandan*, p. 797.

clad."[7] Early writers are agreed as to their friendliness and hospitality.

HIDATSA.—"According to their own tradition the Hidatsa came from the neighborhood of a lake N.E. of their later home, and identified by some of their traditionists with Mini-wakan or Devils lake, N. Dak. . . . Removing from there, perhaps in consequence of attacks by the Sioux, they moved S. W. and allied themselves with the Mandan, who then lived on the W. side of the Missouri, about the mouth of Heart r. The three tribes, Hidatsa, Mandan, and Arikara, were all living in this vicinity about 1765. . . . Some time before 1796 these two tribes [Mandan and Hidatsa] moved up the river to the vicinity of Knife r., where they were found by Lewis and Clark in 1804. . . . There was no change in the location of the villages until after the terrible smallpox epidemic of 1837, which so greatly reduced the Indian population of the upper Missouri. . . . In 1845 they and the remnant of the Mandan also, about the same time, moved up the river and established themselves in a new village close to the trading post of Ft. Berthold, on the N. bank of the Missouri and some distance below the entrance of the Little Missouri, in North Dakota. . . . In home life, religious beliefs and customs, house building, agriculture, the use of the skin boat, and general arts, they closely resembled the Mandan with whom they were associated."[8]

Under the name of the Minatarees they are mentioned by early writers as having essentially the same agreeable characteristics as the Mandans. "And they are now officially known as Gros Ventres . . . , a name applied also to the Atsina, a detached tribe of the Arapaho."[9]

Both Mandan and Hidatsa are agricultural people, among their methods of preserving food being the drying of corn on scaffolds and the cutting of squash in thin slices that are strung on ropes of grass and dried (pl. 7). Some corn scaffolds have high poles at the sides, on which are hung strings of corn with the husks braided together. A corn scaffold with only the floor on which the sheaves of corn are laid is shown in plate 5, *b*. Such a scaffold was usually over a sort of "porch" that formed an entrance to the earth lodge, as in plate 4, *b*.

DWELLINGS AND VILLAGES

MANDAN.—The typical dwelling of the Mandan was the round earth-covered lodge with a scaffold over the entrance (pl. 4, *a*). In 1804 Catlin visited a Mandan village which consisted of such dwell-

[7] Catlin, Manners, Customs, and Condition of the North American Indians, vol. 1, pp. 93, 96.

[8] Handbook Amer. Inds., pt. 1, art. *Hidatsa*, p. 548.

[9] Handbook Amer. Inds., pt. 1, art. *Hidatsa*, pp. 547–548.

ings and was located on a high bank or promontory overlooking the Missouri River. Two sides of the village were protected by the river, which at this point turned at a sharp angle. The third side was protected by "a strong piquet, and a ditch inside of it, of 3 or 4 feet in depth."[10] Back of the village, on the level prairie, were the scaffolds used in disposing of the dead, and at a longer distance were the tribal gardens. The earth lodges were close together except for a "ceremonial space" in the center of the village. In this was a primitive structure, called by various writers an "ark" or a "big canoe." To the writer it was described as a paling of slabs about 6 feet high, within which was a cedar post said to represent "One Man, brother of First Man."[11] When the village in which the Mandan and Hidatsa dwelt at Fort Berthold was abandoned, this structure was moved to Crow's Heart's allotment, as described on page 2.

The tops of the lodges were used for various purposes. They served as a place for storing large articles, such as sledges and hide boats ("bull boats"), as well as pottery. Buffalo skulls were usually to be seen there, and on pleasant days the scalps of the enemy were displayed that the entire village might see them. It was not unusual for men to play games, warriors to relate their exploits, and women to make garments on the tops of the lodges. In the evening the entire family gathered there and sang, the custom of singing on the lodge tops being a pleasant phase of village life. (See songs 57 and 110.)

HIDATSA.—After taking up their abode with the Mandan it appears that the Hidatsa used the same type of house as that tribe. The form of their dwellings before that time must be somewhat a matter of conjecture, but we note that the communal house, or "council house," of Old Dog, an Hidatsa, was a log structure similar to that of the Sioux and Chippewa, while the Mandan retained the earth lodge for their gathering place.

POTTERY

MANDAN.—The excellent quality of Mandan pottery is the more interesting as this tribe lived on the northwestern limit of the pottery area. The ware was thin and well made, with characteristic forms and decoration. In color it was usually black, though sometimes a dull orange or red from firing. The decorations were of two types, the incised and the cord-marked patterns.[12]

---

[10] Catlin, op. cit., vol. 1, pp. 81–82. Cf. also Maximilian, Travels, Pt. II, pp. 266–269.

[11] See analysis of song No. 21.

[12] Will and Spinden, The Mandans, Papers Peabody Mus. Amer. Archaeol. and Ethn., Vol. III, no. 4, pp. 173–179.

Burial Customs

Mandan.—In his account of the Mandan village Catlin states that "the dead are on scaffolds just back of the village, on the level prairie, some hundreds of bodies being there. . . . When the scaffolds fall the skulls are placed in circles on the prairie, each skull on a bunch of wild sage, renewed from time to time."[13] The people of the village were said to betake themselves often to these circles of skulls, sitting for hours at a time and talking to or caressing the skull of a deceased relative. Scaffolds for the dead were used on the Fort Berthold Reservation until comparatively recent time, the accompanying illustration being a scene well remembered by Dr. C. L. Hall, who supplied the photograph. (Pl. 8, *b*.)

Hidatsa.—Lowie states that "two modes of burial were in vogue, and the one preferred by the dying man was followed. One method was that of actual interment, the director digging a pit into which the body was lowered. . . . The second way was scaffold burial.[14]

Language

Mandan.—This is unquestionably of Siouan stock. There are only two small publications in the Mandan language. One is the Ten Commandments, translated by Dr. C. L. Hall, missionary of the Congregational Church on the Fort Berthold Reservation, and the other is a hymn book and translation of the Lord's Prayer prepared by his son, Mr. R. D. Hall. A vocabulary of the Mandan was compiled by Maximilian,[15] and a comparative table of the Mandan and other languages was prepared by Catlin.[16] The only modern study of the language and grammar is that by Will and Spinden, which contains an English-Mandan vocabulary.[17]

Hidatsa.—Like the Mandan, this is of Siouan stock. At the present time it is much more widely spoken than the Mandan, which is fast dying out. A vocabulary of the Hidatsa was compiled by Maximilian,[18] but a comprehensive consideration is given the subject by Matthews, including a grammar and Hidatsa-English and English-Hidatsa vocabularies.[19]

Mythology

The Mandan relate a story concerning the origin of the first man, and also a story concerning the appearance of the tribe on the earth.

---

[13] Catlin, op. cit., vol. 1, pp. 89–90.
[14] Lowie, Notes on the Mandan, Hidatsa, and Crow Indians, pp. 51–52.
[15] Maximilian, Travels, pt. III, pp. 234–261.
[16] Catlin, op. cit., vol. 2, Appendix B.
[17] Will and Spinden, The Mandans, Papers Peabody Mus. Amer. Archaeol. and Ethn., vol. III, no. 4.
[18] Maximilian, op. cit., pp. 261–276.
[19] Matthews, Ethnography of the Hidatsa, pp. 89–239.

DRIED SQUASH

a. Camp on Fort Berthold Reservation

b. Scaffold burial on Fort Berthold Reservation

These stories have nothing in common and are related by the same individual with no attempt at correlation. Thus Scattered Corn said that her father (Moves Slowly) was the last man who could relate in its entirety the "long story about First Man"; she said that she knew it somewhat imperfectly, but related in detail the story of the tribe's ascent through a hole in the ground. Both were recorded by Maximilian, details were added by Catlin and by Lewis and Clark, and versions differing in slight degrees have appeared in recent times. The longer story is a creation myth, summarized as follows: Lord of Life created First Man, who in turn created the earth from mud brought by a duck from the bottom of the sea. A dispute arose between Lord of Life and First Man as to which should address the other as father, and they made what might be termed a test of immortality. In some versions Lord of Life was victorious, while in a version given in connection with song No. 21 of the present work the result of the contest was indeterminate. The contestants in this form of the legend were Old Man Coyote and Cedar Post. From this point the story concerns the shaping of the land and its populating with man and animals. The shorter story states that the Mandan lived beneath the earth. The roots of a grapevine grew down to their abode and admitted the light. With the help of various animals this hole was enlarged and the people climbed up the grapevine to this earth. About half the people had ascended, when a very corpulent woman broke the vine. Thus a portion of the tribe remained below. It is said this happened "near a lake, to the east." Good Fur Robe was their chief when they came upon this earth, and he taught them how to live in their new surroundings.

Besides these stories there are a number of unrelated legends, such as the legends concerning Old Woman Who Never Dies and the origin of the tribal societies.

Music

The music of the Mandan and Hidatsa is fully considered in this paper; the following comments by early travelers are, however, of interest in this connection. John Bradbury, of England, who went to Fort Berthold in the early part of the nineteenth century, wrote as follows concerning the singing of the "Aricaras, Mandans, and Minetarees, or Gros Ventres": "I observed that their voices were in perfect unison, and although, according to our ideas of music, there was neither harmony nor melody, yet the effect was pleasing, as there evidently was system, all the changes of tone being as exactly conformable in point of time as if only one voice had been heard.[20] Catlin, who visited them about 25 years later, made this

[20] Bradbury, Travels in the Interior of America, p. 116.

observation: "There is evidently a set song and sentiment for every dance, for the songs are perfectly measured, and sung in exact time with the beat of the drum, and always with an uniform and invariable set of sounds and expressions . . . which are expressed by the voice, though sometimes not given in any known language whatever. They have other dances and songs which are not so mystified, but which are sung and understood by every person in the tribe, being sung in their own language, with much poetry in them, and perfectly metered, but without rhyme." [21]

Musical Instruments

Drums.—The Mandan appear to have used only the hand drum of the type common to many tribes and shown in plate 9, *a*, *b*. This was of various sizes, the smallest, perhaps, being that used in the Goose Women Society (pl. 13, *a*). This drum was decorated with drawings of goose tracks, but no mention was made of decorations on other drums. Sitting Crow said that some of the drums used in the men's societies were "as large as he could reach around with his two arms." The average size was about 18 inches in diameter. The drumming stick illustrated in plate 9, *a*, is similar to that shown by Catlin in pictures of the Buffalo Society and other dances. A different kind of stick was used with the Goose Women Society drum, as shown in plate 13, *b*. The writer's informants remembered drums made of hide stretched over turtle shells. These may have been common to both tribes, as Pepper and Wilson state that "in the Buffalo dance the Turtle gods were represented by drums." [22]

Rattles.—The principal types of rattles used by both Mandan and Hidatsa were, (1) a receptacle containing small stones or shot and fastened to a handle, and (2) a decorated stick to which pieces of deer hoof were loosely attached. The first type was used in the Black Mouth and Foolish Dog Societies (see pp. 48, 137). Two specimens of a Foolish Dog rattle are illustrated, one being made for the writer (pl. 9, *c*) and the other (pl. 19, *b*) being in the collection of the North Dakota Historical Society. A photograph of the latter specimen was taken to the reservation and shown to the old men, who identified it as a rattle of this society.[23] It consists of a rawhide receptacle containing shot or small pebbles and surrounded by short sections of tail feathers with stiff quills. Long feathers of the eagle were hung from this receptacle. The specimen is 18 inches long (exclusive of the loop

[21] Catlin, Manners, Customs, and Condition of the North American Indians, vol. 1, p. 126.

[22] An Hidatsa shrine, footnote, p. 299.

[23] The writer acknowledges the courtesy of Dr. Melvin R. Gilmore, curator of the North Dakota Historical Society, in loaning this specimen for photography. Other spicimens thus loaned were the "Mushroom" rattle (pl. 9, *d*), the Goose Women Society drum (pl. 13, *a*), and the headdress worn in the Buffalo Society (pl. 19, *a*).

for hanging it), the eagle feathers constituting about half this length. The rawhide head is about 3½ inches thick. Hawk feathers were used on these rattles if eagle feathers were not available. A "mushroom-shaped rattle" (pl. 9, *d*) of somewhat similar construction was used in the ceremony that followed the eagle catching (pp. 62, 63).

The Dog Society rattle (pl. 10, *b*) was supplied by Wounded Face, who said it had been in his possession for many years. Song No. 68 was recorded with the accompaniment of this rattle. Wounded Face said that a dancer held the rattle in his right hand, which hung at his side, the rattle being shaken in that position.

War whistles.—Each society had its form of war whistle, or, according to Maximilian, its "war pipe," made of a wing bone of a bird. Among the war pipes enumerated by Maximilian is a double whistle made of the wing bone of the goose. Wounded Face described a similar whistle made of quills, saying that the quills were those of very large birds, that they were cut 4 or 5 inches in length, fastened together side by side, and blown by directing the breath across the upper open ends of the quills. This whistle was said to produce two tones of different pitch.

Maximilian states that the various sorts of war pipes are "among the badges of the unions, which divide the men into six classes, according to their age." He says "The first band or union is composed of the 'foolish dogs.' . . . They are young people from ten to fifteen years of age, and wear a pipe made of the wing bone of the wild goose which is but small. . . . The second class or band is that of the crows or ravens; it consists of young men from twenty to twenty-five years of age." Theirs is "a double war-pipe consisting of two wing bones of a goose joined together. . . . The third class or band is that of the soldiers," who "paint the upper part of the face red, and the lower part black. Their war pipe is large, and made of the wing bone of a crane. . . . The fourth band, that of the dogs . . . have a large war pipe of the wing bone of a swan. The fifth band is that of the buffaloes. . . . This band alone has a wooden war pipe."[24]

Courting whistles.—Two types of courting whistles were in use among the Mandan and Hidatsa. The first type had the open end carved to represent the head of a bird, resembling in this respect the grass dance whistle of the Sioux and other tribes. (Cf. Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 471.) The second type was said to be like this except that the end was not carved. This was called an "elk whistle" and was said to have "originated through a man who had a dream." In his dream he saw an elk which gave him one of these whistles and told him to use it in courting. It was said further

[24] Maximilian, op. cit., pt. II, pp. 291–295.

that the length of this whistle varied according to the stature of the man who made it, the usual measurement being from the tips of the fingers of the right hand, along the right arm, across the chest, and to the shoulder joint of the left arm. Great stress was laid upon the tone of the instrument. It does not appear that the first type of whistle was so long as this, the specimen illustrated (pl. 10, *b*) being only 22⅝ inches below the mouth. In construction it is an open pipe with the usual whistle or flageolet mouthpiece. The following part of the long harmonic series could be produced on this instrument, the tones being named in ascending order: A flat (second space treble staff), D flat, F, A flat, C flat, D flat, E flat, F. Pan played on this whistle (pls. 10, *a*, 14, *c*) before transferring it to

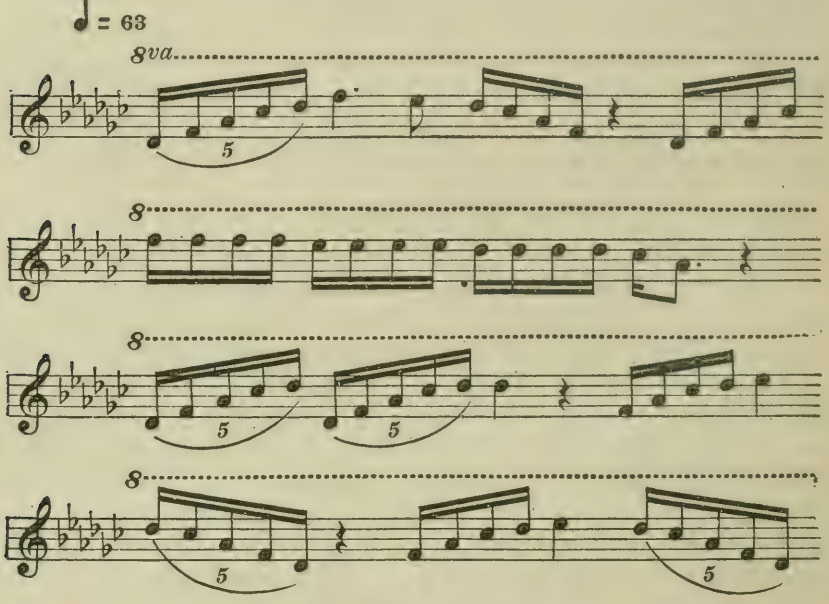
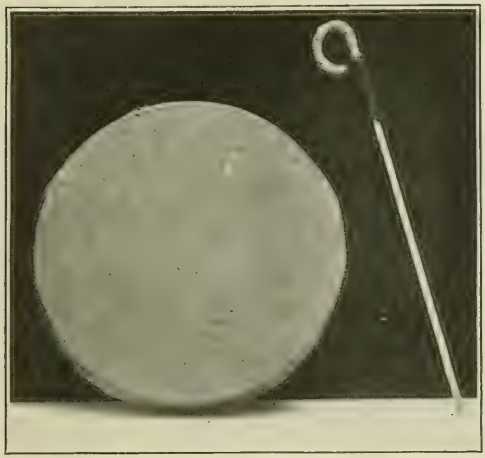



FIG. 1.—Whistle melody.

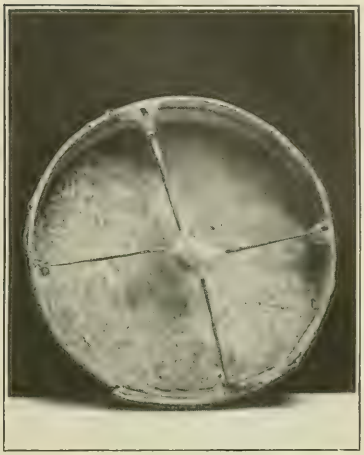
the writer, and a record was made of a portion of his performance, this being transcribed as figure 1. The instrument was also played by Mr. E. H. Hawley, curator of musical instruments, United States National Museum.

It seems possible that the Indians using such a whistle obtained a perception of overtones from the instrument.

FLAGEOLET (commonly called a flute).—No specimen of this instrument was available. It was called a "singing whistle" by the Hidatsa because melodies could be played on it. The traditional origin of this instrument, together with a characteristic melody, is given on pages 80–84 of this work. Sitting Crow said that he once



a. Obverse



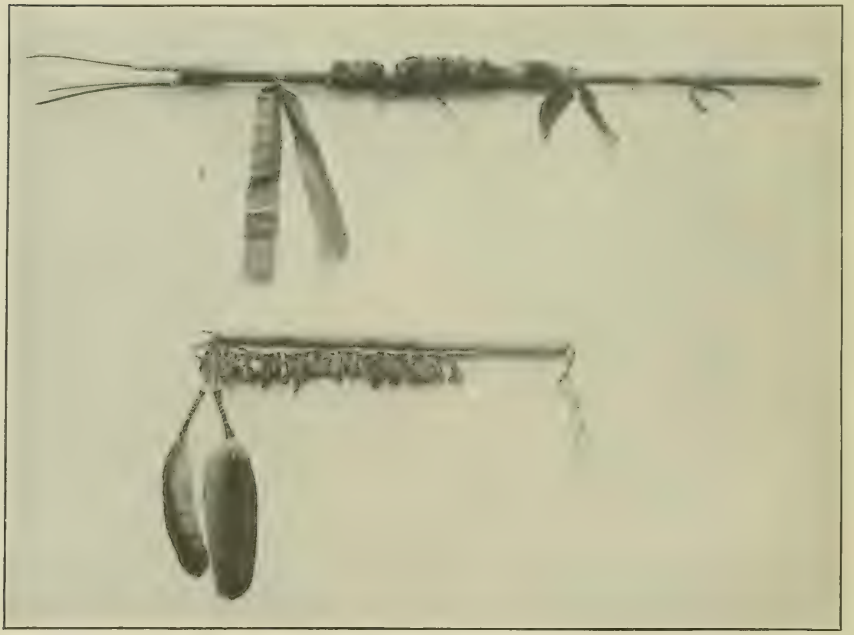
b. Reverse

HAND DRUM

c. Foolish Dog Society rattle

d. "Mushroom" rattle

a. Pan playing on whistle



b. Whistle and Dog Society rattle

took lessons on the instrument, but did not progress far enough to be a proficient player. The flutes were made of box elder wood about 1 inch in diameter, not split, but having the pith scooped out. A notched flint was used for this purpose, the work being done first from one end, then from the other end of the stick. The length was "from the inside of a man's elbow to the end of his middle finger." The instrument had seven holes that were "placed a convenient distance apart." A somewhat similar instrument used by the Utes is described and illustrated in Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., page 28.

Dealings with the United States Government

The Mandan have always been friendly toward the white race, but in 1825 a treaty of peace was made because of "acts of hostility committed by some restless men of the Mandan Tribe." The chiefs and warriors gave satisfactory explanations of these acts and the treaty was consummated on July 30 of that year.[25] The Mandan participated with other tribes in the treaty of Fort Laramie in 1851,[26] one paragraph of this treaty defining the boundaries of the "Gros Ventre, Mandan, and Arrickaras Nations." By an Executive order of April 12, 1870, a reservation was set aside for these tribes, which included more land than had been given them by the Fort Laramie treaty, the reservation including parts of North Dakota and Montana.[27] A portion of this, however, was ceded to the Government in 1880 and additional land given them.[28] The boundaries of the Fort Berthold Reservation were finally established by an act of Congress of March 3, 1891, the reservation being entirely within the present State of North Dakota. This act provided for the allotment of lands in severalty to these tribes.[29]

In 1864 P. J. De Smet, S. J., visited Fort Berthold on behalf of the Government and held councils with the "Ricarees, the Mandans, and Idatzas, or Gros Ventres," all of whom he reported to be "in the best of dispositions toward the whites."[30] It appears that Mahlon Wilkinson was placed in charge soon after De Smet's visit, for in 1868 Mr. Wilkinson made his fourth annual report as United States agent for the Fort Berthold Indians. In this report he commends their loyalty in resisting "all overtures from the hostile Sioux looking to a confederation."[31] For several years the development of agriculture was difficult, as war parties of Sioux and of Canadian

[25] Kappler, Laws and Treaties, vol. II, p. 171.
[26] Ibid., p. 441.
[27] Royce, Indian Land Cessions in the United States, p. 852.
[28] Ibid., p. 900.
[29] Ibid., p. 942.
[30] Ex. Doc. No. 1, 38th Congress, 2d session, p. 422, Washington; 1864.
[31] Report Secretary of the Interior for 1867, pt. II, Ind. Affs., p. 236.

Chippewa made it dangerous for the Indians to go far from their villages unless they were heavily armed. Nevertheless, 1,000 acres were under cultivation in 1872.[32] Peace treaties were made between the Fort Berthold Indians and the Sioux in 1875 through the efforts of Gen. G. A. Custer and General Carlin,[33] and conditions gradually became stabilized. At the present time these Indians are actively engaged in farming and cattle raising on their allotments.

In 1804 the number of Mandans was estimated as about 1,250, increasing later to 1,600, but being reduced to 150 by the smallpox in 1837. The number in 1918 was said to be 274.[34]

MANDAN AND HIDATSA MUSIC

Introduction

The life of the Mandan and Hidatsa has been blended for many years, but each tribe has, to a surprising degree, preserved its own songs. There are many songs which the tribes appear to have in common and which are usually associated with their societies, but there are other songs which are said to be distinctly Mandan or Hidatsa. These are the songs connected with ceremonies, legends, or tribal warriors. A majority of the songs herewith presented are Mandan songs, as they were the principal subject of the research; others are Hidatsa or appear to belong to the two tribes in common. The Mandan are able to speak the Hidatsa language and frequently use it in their songs, as it is easier to sing. In such instances they stated that the melody was Mandan and that they could sing the words in either language, but used the Hidatsa by preference. Mandan words are transcribed with 30 songs and Hidatsa with 20 songs; Mandan words are translated but not transcribed with 4 songs and Hidatsa with 12 songs.

At the beginning of the work a special inquiry was directed toward the songs of the Little River Women Society and songs connected with the corn customs. Beyond this the singers were encouraged to suggest the songs which they regarded as valuable for preservation. It is interesting to note the prominence of songs said to have been received from supernatural beings, as the "spirit women," the black eagle, the coyote, and the bear. Even the moon gave them a song, teaching it to the young girls as they danced. Inquiry failed to produce any information concerning the use of music in the treatment of the sick, which formed an important phase of the music of Chippewa, Sioux, and Ute. The available information concerning medi-

[32] Report of Secretary of the Interior for 1872, vol. 1, p. 647.
[33] Report of Secretary of the Interior for 1875, vol. 1, p. 744.
[34] Report of Commissioner of Indian Affairs for 1918, p. 92.

cine practices was meager and of little value. About 40 years before the present research was conducted E. H. Alden, Indian agent at Fort Berthold, reported that "the confidence in their medicine men is slowly disappearing."[35] In 1918 Wounded Face said, "Everyone knows that wild mint crushed and mixed with water will reduce a fever; no conjuring is required in the use of it." This indicates that the native illusions have passed away. Inquiry also failed to discover any existent ethical teachings corresponding to those of the Chippewa Mĭdé or the leaders in the Sioux sun dance.

As already indicated, it is the custom of the writer to follow rather than force the trend of Indian thought. This often leads to unforeseen and interesting results. For instance, Ben Benson, a reliable informant, asked if anything had been "written down" concerning the custom of eagle catching and offered to record the Mandan songs, which he alone has the hereditary right to sing. He was allowed to select the place where he wished to record them, and designated a place where he thought he would be safe from interruption. He brought with him a prominent Mandan chief to act as witness, according to the native custom. At intervals during his narration he consulted this witness, who had the right to offer corrections if he considered them to be necessary. (See p. 61.)

The poetry and dignity of the Mandan character is shown in the words of the songs. Aside from the songs and information relative to the Stone Hammer Society, the Hidatsa are less clearly represented than the Mandan in the present work. They are, however, a somewhat less distinctive tribe and are better preserved for future study. The Mandan have almost disappeared, and when a small group of old men and women pass away there will no longer be an opportunity to study that tribe. It is to be regretted that more has not been written concerning these people, who were among the first to till the fertile northern plains.

The songs herewith presented were recorded at two points on the reservation—the agency at Elbowoods and a place on the western side of the Missouri known as "Crow's Heart's Landing" (pl. 6, *a*), near which the writer camped for a time. By living among the people in this manner it was possible to secure material which they would have been reluctant to discuss at the agency. Field work, as already stated, was begun in 1912 under the auspices of the State Historical Society of North Dakota and continued in 1915 and 1918 under the Bureau of American Ethnology.

The Mandan and Hidatsa are different in temperament from their neighbors, the Sioux, and also from the Chippewa and Ute. Each

[35] Report of Secretary of the Interior for 1877, vol. I, p. 455.

tribe has its personal characteristics as well as its distinct traditions and customs. The principal subject under investigation was the music of the Mandan, and it is believed that the songs credited to that tribe are old Mandan melodies. A similar number believed to be purely Hidatsa was not collected; therefore a detailed comparison of the music of the two tribes is not undertaken in this work. It is possible, however, to make a tentative comparison of the Mandan with the mixed material through the comparative group analyses on pages 16–26. The first 46 songs are believed to be Mandan, and the remainder are designated as "Mandan and Hidatsa," the tribal origin of each song, when known, being included in the description of the song. In the following consideration the music of the two tribes is regarded as a unit.

The Mandan and Hidatsa songs show in abundance certain characteristics which were noted with less frequency in the songs previously analyzed. Chief among these is the rest which appears in 19 per cent of these songs. A rest appeared very rarely in the Chippewa songs, in 10 (less than one-half of 1 per cent) of the Sioux songs, and in 13 (more than 11 per cent) of the Ute songs. A rest in Indian music is different from a rest in the music of civilization. The tribes of Indians thus far studied by the writer, when singing, appear to take breath only when they require it, not at stated intervals, and the taking of breath is almost imperceptible. Rests, when they occur, are intentional and part of the song.[36] In many instances it appears that a rest is introduced to give variety to the melody, though there are occasional instances in which a rest occurs at the end of a phrase. Syncopations (*nota legato*) occurred in 5 of the 340 Chippewa songs, in 3 of the 240 Sioux songs, and in 4 of 110 Ute songs, but appear in 12 (11 per cent) of the present series.

A glissando, or sliding from one tone to another, was prominent in Ute singing, but not used in any marked degree by the Chippewa or Sioux. A downward glissando appeared in the Ute songs of the bear dance and was said to imitate the sound made by a bear, and an upward glissando was used by them in songs connected with the hand game. (See Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 58 and 175.) In the present series a glissando appears only in the Mandan songs (see analysis of No. 1), and appears chiefly at the end of a phrase, the final tone of these songs being followed by a sliding downward of the voice, the degree varying from a whole tone to a fourth and being the same in all renditions of the song. This glissando, as well as

[36] The same peculiarity has been noted in the music of India. "Rests are seldom written (except in order to break up the meter intentionally in a dramatic way) in any of their songs, at any rate not, as we should, on account of the words: . . . They appear to take breath when they want to take it, not at the end of words." Fox Strangways, Music of Hindostan, pp. 192–193.

the pitch on which it ends, is not sufficiently definite for musical transcription. A peculiarity not observed in the songs of other tribes is the ending on an unaccented part of the measure, the tone not being prolonged into the following measure. This appears in 24 per cent of these songs. A duplication of songs by different singers was more frequent than among other tribes, suggesting that only a limited number of the old songs remain at the present time. The duplication of words was also more frequent, the same words being used with different melodies (see analysis of No. 58).

The "special signs" used in the transcriptions are the same as in previous works, and the custom of writing the final measure as a complete measure is continued, except in songs which begin with an incomplete measure and have no break in the time between the renditions.

The analysis of the songs according to their key has been discontinued.[37] The chief purpose of this analysis was to test the range of the singers' voices. From the 720 songs analyzed in this manner[38] it was found that A was the tone most frequently used as keynote, next in frequency being G and F. Other tables discontinued are those treating of the tempo of voice and drum.[39] From the analysis of 710 songs[40] it appears that the largest proportions of voice tempo were ♩=72 to ♩=96, and that the largest proportions of drum tempo were slightly faster, being ♩=92 to ♩=120. The tempo of the voice is slower than that of the drum in 32 per cent and faster than that of the drum in 16 per cent of these songs.

The form of graphic representation of melody by means of a "plot" on coordinate vertical and horizontal lines[41] is used in this volume only briefly for the purpose of comparison.[42] Two slightly different forms have been devised and are here introduced, the first omitting all coordinates and showing the path of the accented melody tones (pls. 11, 12), and the second using the horizontal coordinates and showing the progressions of unaccented as well as accented tones.[43]

In order to simplify the presentation of analyses the serial numbers of the songs in their several classifications are placed at the conclusion of the text (pp. 178–184) instead of at the end of each group of songs.

---

[37] See analytical table No. 14 in Bulls. 53, 61, and 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn. In these works the term "key" was "used in its broad sense, as applicable to nonharmonic music, inclusive of modes."

[38] Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 42, 43.

[39] See analytical tables 20, 21, and 22, Bulls. 53, 61, and 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn.; also Bull. 45, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 11.

[40] Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 48–51.

[41] See Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 53.

[42] See p. 34.

[43] See analyses of songs 72 and 92.

Tabulated Analysis of 820 Chippewa, Sioux, Ute, Mandan, and Hidatsa Songs[1]

Melodic Analysis

Table 1.—Tonality

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Major tonality[2]	195	57	11	55	93	39	78	71	65	59	442	54
Minor tonality[3]	142	42	9	45	145	60	24	22	43	39	363	44
Third lacking							8	7	2	2	10	1
Beginning major, ending minor	2	1									2	
Beginning minor, ending major	1										1	
Irregular							2	1			2	
Total	340		20		240		110		110		820	

[1] The serial numbers of the songs as grouped in these tables are shown on pp. 178–184.
[2] Songs are thus classified if the third is a major third and the sixth a major sixth above the keynote.
[3] Songs are thus classified if the third is a minor third and the sixth a minor sixth above the keynote.

Table 2.—First note of song—its relation to keynote

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Beginning on the—												
Fourteenth					1						1	
Thirteenth	4	1									4	
Twelfth	105	31	2	10	28	12	4	3	4	3	143	17
Eleventh	3	1	1	5	7	3	1	1	2	2	14	1
Tenth	24	7	2	10	23	10	2	2	2	2	54	7
Ninth	16	5			9	4	3	3			28	3
Octave	61	18	6	30	56	23	31	28	34	31	188	23
Seventh	6	2	1	5	1		1	1	4	3	13	1
Sixth	10	3			3	1	3	3	3	3	19	2
Fifth	72	21	3	15	69	29	34	31	24	22	201	24
Fourth	7	2			3	1	2	2	2	2	14	1
Third	10	3	2	10	18	8	17	15	19	17	66	8
Second	9	3			3	1	3	3	2	2	17	2
Keynote	13	4	3	15	17	7	9	8	14	12	56	7
Irregular					2	1					2	
Total	340		20		240		110		110		820	

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 3.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO KEYNOTE

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Ending on the—												
Sixth									1	1	1	
Fifth	75	22	6	30	74	31	47	43	51	47	253	30
Third	36	11	1	5	35	15	8	7	17	15	97	12
Keynote	229	67	13	65	129	54	55	50	41	37	467	57
Irregular					2	1					2	
Total	340		20		240		110		110		820	

TABLE 4.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO COMPASS OF SONG

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs in which final tone is—												
Lowest tone in song	307	90	18	90	212	88	77	70	101	92	715	87
Highest tone in song	1										1	
Immediately preceded by—												
Fifth below	1										1	
Fourth below	9	3					3	3	1	1	13	1
Major third below	2				1		1	1			4	
Minor third below	7	2			2	1	5	4			14	1
Whole tone below	5	2			7	3	5	4			17	2
Semitone below					3	1	2	2	2	2	7	
Whole tone below, with sixth below in a previous measure	1										1	
Whole tone below, with fourth below in a previous measure	1											
Whole tone below, with minor third below in a previous measure							6	5			7	
							1	1			1	
Songs containing a fourth below the final tone	3	1			4	2	1	1	1	1	9	1

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 4.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO COMPASS OF SONG—Continued

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs containing a major third below the final tone	.....	.....	.....	.....	4	2	2	2	2	2	8	.....
Songs containing a minor third below the final tone	3	1	2	10	5	2	4	4	.....	.....	14	1
Songs containing a whole tone below the final tone	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	2	1	1	3	.....
Songs containing a semitone below the final tone	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	1	1	2	.....
Songs containing a fourth below the final tone, with fourth below in a previous measure	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	1	.....
Irregular	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

TABLE 5.—NUMBER OF TONES COMPRISED IN COMPASS OF SONG

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total.	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Compass of—												
Seventeen tones	.....	.....	.....	.....	3	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	3	.....
Fifteen tones	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	.....	.....	1	.....
Fourteen tones	9	3	.....	.....	5	2	.....	.....	1	1	15	2
Thirteen tones	29	8	.....	.....	17	7	2	2	6	5	54	6
Twelve tones	103	30	3	15	41	17	10	9	12	11	169	21
Eleven tones	31	9	5	25	9	4	10	9	23	21	78	9
Ten tones	38	11	4	20	39	16	10	9	14	12	105	13
Nine tones	18	6	5	25	28	12	18	16	7	6	76	9
Eight tones	71	21	2	10	83	35	34	31	27	25	217	26
Seven tones	16	5	.....	.....	4	2	7	6	6	5	33	4
Six tones	10	3	1	5	8	3	12	11	5	4	36	4
Five tones	13	4	.....	.....	1	.....	3	3	9	8	26	3
Four tones	2	.....	.....	.....	2	1	1	1	.....	.....	5	.....
Three tones	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	2	.....	.....	2	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 6.—TONE MATERIAL

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total.	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
First five-toned scale	1				1						2	
Second five-toned scale	40	12	3	15	31	13	7	6	5	4	86	10
Fourth five-toned scale	88	26	6	30	43	18	20	18	20	18	177	22
Fifth five-toned scale	2										2	
Major triad	4	1			1		5	5	3	3	13	1
Major triad and seventh	1				1		1	1	1	1	4	
Major triad and sixth	42	12			4	2	5	5	4	3	55	7
Major triad and fourth	2						3	3	3	3	8	
Major triad and second	3	1			8	3	17	15	10	9	38	5
Minor triad	1				2	1			1	1	4	
Minor triad and seventh	3	1			1		2	2	8	7	14	1
Minor triad and sixth	6	2							1	1	7	
Minor triad and fourth	18	6	1	5	30	12	4	4	6	5	59	7
Minor triad and second	1				1				4	3	6	
Octave complete	19	6	2	10	14	6	7	6	9	8	51	6
Octave complete except seventh	32	9	2	10	20	8	12	11	9	8	75	9
Octave complete except seventh and sixth	6	2			16	7	5	5			27	3
Octave complete except seventh, sixth, and fourth					1						1	
Octave complete except seventh, fifth, and second					1						1	
Octave complete except seventh, third, and second									1	1	1	
Octave complete except seventh and fourth[1]	4	1			5	2			1	1	10	1
Octave complete except seventh and third	1				1				1	1	3	
Octave complete except seventh and second	11	3	1	5	9	4	3	3	2	2	26	3
Octave complete except sixth	15	4	2	10	12	5			4	3	33	4
Octave complete except sixth and fifth			1	5							1	
Octave complete except sixth and fourth	1				2	1	1	1	1	1	5	
Octave complete except sixth and third					1						1	
Octave complete except sixth and second	1				4	2			3	3	8	
Octave complete except sixth, fifth, and second			1	5	1						2	

[1] These songs are minor in tonality, the mediant being a minor third and the submediant being a minor sixth above the keynote. It will be noted that the seventh and fourth are the omitted scale degrees in the fourth five-toned scale, but in that scale the third and sixth above the keynote are major intervals.

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 6.—TONE MATERIAL—Continued

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Octave complete except fifth and second					1						1	
Octave complete except fourth	5	2			10	4	3	3	6	5	24	3
Octave complete except fourth and third	1										1	
Octave complete except fourth and second	1				3	1			3	3	7	
Octave complete except third	1								1	1	2	
Octave complete except third and second					1						1	
Octave complete except second	10	3			11	5	1	1	4	3	26	3
Minor third and seventh							1	1			1	
Minor third and fourth	3	1			1		1	1			5	
Minor third, seventh, and fourth							2	2			2	
First, fourth, and fifth tones					1		1	1			2	
First, second, and fifth tones	1								1	1	2	
First, second, fourth, and fifth tones	1						2	2			3	
First, second, fifth, and sixth tones	6	2					4	4			10	1
First, second, third, and sixth tones	9	3	1	5	2	1	1	1			13	1
	340		20		240		110		110		820	

TABLE 7.—ACCIDENTALS

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—												
No accidentals	288	85	18	90	196	82	106	96	89	88	697	85
Seventh raised a semitone	4	1	1	5	10	4	1	1	6	5	22	3

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 7.—ACCIDENTALS—Continued

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—Contd.												
Sixth raised a semitone	9	3	1	5	3	1	.....	.....	1	1	14	1
Fourth raised a semitone	2	1	.....	.....	6	2	3	3	5	4	16	1
Third raised a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	2	.....
Second raised a semitone	3	1	.....	.....	3	1	.....	.....	2	2	8	.....
Seventh lowered a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	3	1	.....	.....	3	3	7	.....
Sixth lowered a semitone	16	5	.....	.....	5	2	.....	.....	1	1	22	2
Fifth lowered a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Fourth lowered a semitone	2	.....	.....	.....	3	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	5	.....
Third lowered a semitone	3	1	.....	.....	3	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	6	.....
Second lowered a semitone	6	2	.....	.....	2	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	8	.....
Seventh and fourth raised a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	2	2	4	.....
Sixth and third raised a semitone	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Fourth raised a semitone and second lowered a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Second raised a semitone and sixth and second lowered a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Fourth raised a semitone and third and second lowered a semitone	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Seventh and fourth lowered a semitone	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Second, third, and sixth lowered a semitone	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Irregular	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 8.—STRUCTURE

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Melodic [1]	222	*65*	17	*85*	158	*66*	54	*49*	31	*28*	482	*59*
Melodic with harmonic framework [2]	35	*10*	3	*15*	47	*20*	32	*29*	44	*40*	161	*19*
Harmonic [3]	83	*24*	.....	.....	33	*14*	24	*22*	35	*30*	175	*21*
Irregular	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

[1] Songs are thus classified if contiguous accented tones do not bear a simple chord relation to each other.
[2] Songs are thus classified if only a portion of the contiguous accented tones bear a simple chord relation to each other.
[3] Songs are thus classified if all the contiguous accented tones bear a simple chord relation to each other.

TABLE 9.—FIRST PROGRESSION—DOWNWARD AND UPWARD

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Downward	238	*70*	12	*60*	165	*69*	76	*69*	56	*51*	547	*67*
Upward	102	*30*	8	*40*	75	*31*	34	*31*	54	*49*	273	*33*
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

TABLE 10.—TOTAL NUMBER OF PROGRESSIONS—DOWNWARD AND UPWARD [1]

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Downward	5,422	*65*	346	*64*	4,651	*63*	1,887	*61*	1,733	*63*	14,039	*64*
Upward	2,864	*35*	198	*36*	2,674	*37*	1,226	*39*	1,038	*37*	8,000	*36*
Total	8,286	.....	544	.....	7,325	.....	3,113	.....	2,771	.....	22,039	.....

[1] In a group of Slovak songs analyzed according to this method it was found that the minor third occurred one-fourth to one-half as frequently as in Indian songs, while the minor second occurred from three to four times as frequently. (Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 56.) In the music of the Hindus it has been found that "The augmented Fourth and diminished Fifth, which we avoid, are common with them. . . . No less surprising than the presence of intervals which seem to us unvocal is the comparative absence of what we should call vocal intervals—the Thirds, Perfect Fourth and Fifth, and the Sixths. . . . A Third, in fact, is habitually taken as a changing note: . . . or a grace-note: . . . or, especially in ascent, ni a sort of tentative way: . . . indeed, in any way but as a harmonic interval." Fox Strangways, Music of Hindostan, pp. 324–325.

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 11.—INTERVALS IN DOWNWARD PROGRESSION

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Intervals of a—												
Twelfth	1										1	
Ninth	1										1	
Octave	2										2	
Seventh	2										2	
Major sixth	12				1						13	
Minor sixth					6		9		5		20	
Fifth	59	*1*	3		26	*1*	30	*2*	10		128	
Fourth	421	*8*	22	*6*	525	*11*	281	*13*	239	*14*	1,488	*10*
Major third	628	*11*	4	*1*	343	*7*	243	*15*	206	*14*	1,424	*10*
Minor third	1,824	*34*	114	*33*	1,396	*30*	446	*24*	567	*33*	4,347	*31*
Augmented second			1		5				2		8	
Major second	2,472	*42*	198	*57*	2,085	*45*	824	*44*	612	*34*	6,191	*44*
Minor second			4	*1*	264	*6*	54	*3*	92	*5*	414	3
Total	5,422		346		4,651		1,887		1,733		14,039	

TABLE 12.—INTERVALS IN UPWARD PROGRESSION

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Intervals of a—												
Fourteenth	1										1	
Twelfth	17										17	
Eleventh	3				1						4	
Tenth	4		1		6				3		14	
Ninth	2		2	*1*	6		4				14	
Octave	43	*1*	2	*1*	63	*2*	12	*1*	14	*1*	134	*1*
Seventh	9				13		4		2		28	
Major sixth	47	*2*	1		16		12	*1*	14	*1*	90	*1*
Minor sixth			3	*1*	30	*1*	22	*2*	20	*2*	75	
Fifth	196	*7*	11	*6*	151	*6*	89	*7*	50	*5*	497	*6*
Fourth	388	*14*	31	*16*	422	*16*	198	*16*	233	*23*	1,272	*16*
Major third	345	*12*	9	*4*	271	*10*	171	*14*	123	*12*	919	*11*
Minor third	800	*29*	51	*26*	710	*27*	246	*20*	281	*27*	2,088	*26*
Major second	1,009	*35*	85	*43*	818	*31*	439	*36*	256	*25*	2,607	*33*
Minor second			2	*1*	167	*6*	29	*2*	42	*4*	240	*3*
Total	2,864		198		2,674		1,226		1,038		8,000	

MELODIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 13.—AVERAGE NUMBER OF SEMITONES IN AN INTERVAL

	Chippewa songs	Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa	Old Sioux songs	Comparatively modern Sioux songs	Ute songs	Mandan and Hidatsa songs	Total
Number of songs	340	20	147	93	110	110	820
Number of intervals	8,286	544	4,445	2,880	3,113	2,771	22,039
Number of semitones	25,791	1,592	12,864	8,558	9,777	9,080	67,662
Average number of semitones in an interval	3.1	2.93	2.89	2.97	3.14	3.27	3.07

RHYTHMIC ANALYSIS

TABLE 14.—PART OF MEASURE ON WHICH SONG BEGINS

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Beginning on unaccented part of measure	109	*37*	12	*60*	96	*40*	25	*23*	47	*43*	289	*37*
Beginning on accented part of measure	189	*63*	8	*40*	*144*	*60*	85	*76*	63	*57*	489	*63*
Transcribed in outline	42	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	42	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

TABLE 15.—RHYTHM (METER) OF FIRST MEASURE

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
First measure in—												
2–4 time	149	*50*	9	*45*	142	*59*	68	*62*	61	*55*	429	*55*
3–4 time	120	*40*	6	*30*	94	*39*	39	*35*	47	*43*	305	*39*
4–4 time	9	*3*	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	9	*1*
5–4 time	9	*3*	4	*20*	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	13	*1*
6–4 time	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
7–4 time	2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....
3–8 time	4	*2*	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4	.....
4–8 time	.....	.....	.....	.....	3	*1*	2	*2*	.....	.....	5	.....
5–8 time	2	.....	1	*5*	1	*1*	1	*1*	1	*1*	6	.....
7–8 time	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	*1*	1	.....
2–2 time	2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	.....
Transcribed in outline [1]	42	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	42	.....
	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

[1] Excluded in computing percentage.

RHYTHMIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 16.—CHANGE OF TIME (MEASURE-LENGTHS)

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs containing no change of time	69	23	1	5	18	8	12	11	20	18	120	15
Songs containing a change of time	229	77	19	95	222	92	98	89	90	82	658	85
Transcribed in outline[1]	42	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	42	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

[1] Excluded in computing percentage.

TABLE 17.—RHYTHMIC UNIT[1]

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—												
No rhythmic unit	107	36	7	35	71	29	27	25	33	30	245	30
One rhythmic unit	186	62	10	50	139	57	60	55	66	60	461	56
Two rhythmic units	4	1	3	15	25	10	20	18	9	8	61	8
Three rhythmic units	1	.....	.....	.....	3	1	3	3	2	2	9	1
Four rhythmic units	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Five rhythmic units	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	.....
Transcribed in outline[2]	42	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	42	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	240	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

[1] For the purpose of this analysis a rhythmic unit is defined as "a group of tones of various lengths, usually comprising more than one count of a measure, occurring two or more times in a song and having an evident influence on the rhythm of the entire song."

[2] Excluded in computing percentage.

TABLE 18.—RHYTHM OF DRUM, MORACHE, OR RATTLE

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Sixteenth notes unaccented[1]	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	1	1	2	1	2	3	.....
Eighth notes accented in groups of two[2]	10	4	.....	.....	11	9	.....	.....	2	4	23	5
Eighth notes unaccented[3]	89	40	12	60	42	34	23	35	13	30	179	38
Quarter notes unaccented[4]	12	5	.....	.....	44	36	30	46	19	61	105	22

[1] See No. 2. [2] See No. 31. [3] See No. 32. [4] See No. 37.

RHYTHMIC ANALYSIS—continued

TABLE 18.—RHYTHM OF DRUM, MORACHE, OR RATTLE—Continued

	Chippewa songs		Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa		Sioux songs		Ute songs		Mandan and Hidatsa songs		Total	
	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent	Number	Per cent
Half notes unaccented [5]	1	.....	2	10	2	2	.....	.....	1	2	6	1
Each accented beat preceded by an unaccented beat which corresponds approximately to the third count of a triplet [6]	96	43	6	30	22	18	5	8	7	9	136	29
Each accented beat followed by an unaccented beat which corresponds approximately to the second count of a triplet [7]	2	1	.....	.....	.....	.....	2	3	.....	.....	4	1
Each accented beat preceded by an unaccented beat which corresponds to the fourth member of a group of four sixteenth notes [8]	14	6	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	14	3
Tremolo drum beat in opening measures, followed by drum beat in quarter-note values [9]	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	4	5	.....	.....	4	.....
Two drum beats in each measure, the voice being in triple time [10]	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	1	2	1	.....
Drum not recorded [11]	116	.....	.....	.....	118	.....	45	.....	66	.....	345	.....
Total	340	.....	20	.....	249	.....	110	.....	110	.....	820	.....

[5] See No. 5.
[6] See No. 50.
[7] See Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., No. 11.
[8] See Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., No. 125.
[9] See Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn., No. 72.
[10] See No. 3.
[11] Excluded in computing percentage.

ANALYSIS OF CHIPPEWA, SIOUX, UTE, MANDAN, AND HIDATSA SONGS [44]

The purpose of this chapter is to present in descriptive form the more important data contained in the tabulated analyses immediately

[44] Attention is directed to the impossibility of presenting in a graphic manner the exact pitch or tone lengths of all Indian singing. (Cf. tone photographs of Indian singing in Bull. 75, Bur. Amer. Ethn.) Ordinary musical notation is here used, with a few special signs, because it is approximately correct in a large majority of songs, and is readily intelligible to students of this subject. The same notation is used by Fox Strangways in his work upon the music of Hindostan with this explanation: "It is but little, in any case, of language, whether spoken or chanted, that symbols can recreate for us. . . . One caution with regard to these tunes. It would be a mistake to play them on a keyed instrument; they should be played on the violin, or sung, or whistled, or merely thought. Not only because there is then a hope of their being rendered in natural intonation and of getting the sharp edges of the tones rounded by some sort of portamento, but also because the temperament of a keyed instrument in Europe the piano, in India the harmonium, has a unique power of making an unharmonized melody sound invincibly commonplace." Fox Strangways, op. cit., p. 18.

preceding and also to present comparisons between the several classes of Mandan and Hidatsa songs, these comparisons not being shown in tabulated form.

TABLE 1.—*Tonality.*—On comparing the tonality of Mandan and Hidatsa songs with that of songs previously analyzed we note that the proportion of major songs is 20 per cent larger than among the Sioux and 12 per cent smaller than among the Ute, while it is about the same as among the Chippewa.

A comparison of the several groups of Mandan and Hidatsa songs shows that the major tonality predominates in the garden songs, in the songs of women's societies, and in those of the Stone Hammer, Buffalo, and Horse Societies. Major and minor are almost equal in songs of the Dog and Fox Societies.

TABLES 2 AND 3.—*Beginning and ending of songs.*—Forty-seven per cent of the Mandan and Hidatsa songs end on the fifth, contrasted with 26 per cent of the combined Chippewa and Sioux, and 31 per cent of the Ute songs. Thirty-one per cent begin on the octave and 12 per cent on the keynote, contrasted with 21 per cent and 5 per cent in the combined Chippewa and Sioux songs, and with 28 and 8 per cent in the Ute songs. This suggests a stronger feeling for a fundamental tone and its principal upper partials in the Mandan and Hidatsa songs than in those previously analyzed.

The ending on the fifth is especially marked in Mandan and Hidatsa songs of the Stone Hammer and Fox Societies.

TABLE 4.—*Last note of song—its relation to compass of song.*—The principal interest of this table is in the proportion of songs in which the final tone is the lowest tone. In this peculiarity the Mandan and Hidatsa songs show a larger proportion than any previously analyzed. This is a further indication of the feeling for a fundamental tone, mentioned in connection with the table next preceding.

TABLE 5.—*Number of tones comprising compass of song.*—The Mandan and Hidatsa songs contain neither the extended compass found in certain Sioux songs (15 and 17 tones), nor the very small compass of certain Ute songs (three and four tones). They differ from the preceding songs chiefly in their large proportion of songs with a compass of five tones.

Comparing the several groups of Mandan and Hidatsa songs, we note a large compass (an octave or more) in the songs of societies, in the garden songs, and in songs of war. An average compass (about an octave) occurs in songs of the Buffalo and Horse Societies, and a small compass (less than an octave) is found in the songs connected with eagle catching.

TABLE 6.—*Tone material.*—The five-toned scales mentioned in this table and in the descriptive analyses are the five pentatonic scales according to Helmholtz, described by him as follows:

"1. *The First Scale* without Third or Seventh. . . .

"2. *To the Second Scale*, without Second or Sixth, belong most Scotch airs which have a minor character. . . .

"3. *The Third Scale*, without Third and Sixth. . . .

"4. *To the Fourth Scale*, without Fourth or Seventh, belong most Scotch airs which have the character of a major mode.

"5. *The Fifth Scale*, without Second and Fifth." [45]

The proportion of Mandan and Hidatsa songs containing five tones (scale degrees) is smaller than that in Chippewa and Sioux songs and larger than in the Ute songs. The proportion of these songs containing less than five tones is 10 per cent larger than in the Chippewa and Sioux songs, and about the same as in the Ute. As the Chippewa and Sioux have been in contact with the music of the white race longer than the other tribes under consideration, we might infer that paucity of melodic material is a characteristic of the older native songs. This inference, however, is not upheld by the following comparison between the groups of Mandan and Hidatsa songs.

Seventy per cent of the Mandan and Hidatsa war songs and 39 per cent of the society songs are five-toned melodies, but the latter are not songs of the societies said to have been organized by Good Fur Robe, which are presumably the older songs. In this group only 20 per cent are five-toned melodies. Seven of the 12 eagle-catching songs contain either three or four scale degrees. Every group except the last (Nos. 103–110) contains one song having all the tones of the octave. It is interesting to note, in this connection, that 37 per cent of the Ute songs contain only four scale degrees.

TABLE 7.—*Accidentals.*—In the proportion of songs containing no accidentals the Mandan and Hidatsa are lower than any preceding series, differing, however, only 1 per cent from the Sioux. These accidentals do not, in any instance, suggest a change of keynote, or "key," but appear to be in the nature of embellishments.

The largest proportion of accidentals in the Mandan and Hidatsa songs is found in the songs of Good Fur Robe's societies, about one-third of which contain tones chromatically altered. Next in proportion are the songs of other societies (Nos. 58–76), less than one-fourth of which contain accidentals.

TABLE 8.—*Structure.*—The percentage of harmonic and also of purely melodic songs is smaller in the Mandan and Hidatsa than in previous groups, a large increase being shown in the "mixed group," whose structure is classified as "melodic with harmonic framework."

[45] Helmholtz, The Sensations of Tone, pp. 260, 261.

The percentage of such songs is four times that of the Chippewa and double that of the Sioux.

In the Mandan and Hidatsa songs a harmonic structure predominates in songs of the Dog and Fox Societies, and in the songs connected with eagle catching. All the songs of the Buffalo and Horse Societies are melodic in structure, while the garden songs and war songs are chiefly melodic.

TABLES 9 AND 10.—*First progression and total number of progressions.*—The proportion of songs beginning with a downward interval is much smaller in the Mandan and Hidatsa than in songs previously analyzed, the proportion in this series being 51 per cent and in previous series from 60 to 70 per cent, but the proportion of descending progressions in the total number of intervals is about the same, being precisely that of the Sioux and within 2 per cent of that of the Chippewa and Ute. This indicates that, although more of the Mandan and Hidatsa songs begin with an ascending interval, they have, in their entirety, the same descending trend that characterizes the music of the other tribes.

TABLES 11 AND 12.—*Intervals in upward and downward progression.*—Intervals larger than a tenth are used only by the Chippewa, and intervals larger than a major sixth are used more frequently by the Chippewa than by the other tribes under consideration. The interval of a semitone, which seldom occurs in the Chippewa songs, appears most frequently in the Sioux songs. The proportion of descending fourths is much larger in Mandan and Hidatsa songs than in those of the other tribes, while the proportion of ascending fourths is much larger than in the Ute, but about the same as in the Chippewa and Sioux songs. The fifth occurs oftener in ascending and less frequently in descending progression in the Mandan and Hidatsa than in the preceding series, while the ascending octave occurs with about the same frequency in all the songs under analysis. This indicates there is no important difference in the intervals used by these tribes.

TABLE 13.—*Average number of semitones in an interval.*—The average interval in Mandan and Hidatsa songs does not show an important variation from that of the other songs under analysis. The average interval in the entire series is approximately a minor third.

TABLES 14 AND 15.—*Part of measure on which song begins, and rhythm of first measure.*—The Mandan and Hidatsa songs do not show the directness of attack which characterized the Ute songs, but the proportion beginning on the accented part of the measure does not vary materially from the Chippewa and Sioux. The preference for a beginning in 3–4 time is greater in the Mandan and Hidatsa than in the other songs under analysis.

TABLE 16.—*Change of time (measure lengths).*—The proportion of Mandan and Hidatsa songs containing no change of time is the same as in the Sioux, smaller than in the Chippewa, and larger than in the Ute.

Comparing the several classes of Mandan and Hidatsa songs, we note a persistent change of time in songs connected with eagle catching, songs of the societies, and miscellaneous songs, while the war songs contain more than the usual proportion in which there is no change of time.

TABLE 17.—*Rhythmic unit.*—The term "rhythmic unit" should be understood as somewhat flexible in its application.[b] In a song with definite thematic development the term is applicable in its full meaning. There are, however, many songs in which a repetition of the opening phrase is designated as a rhythmic unit, and in such instances a reason will be found in the influence which the phrase has upon the rhythm of the entire song, certain of its count divisions being separately repeated, slightly changed, and variously combined. In a few instances it will be noted that a short phrase occurring twice is not designated as a rhythmic unit, the reason being that the phrase is characterless, and evidently has had no influence on the rest of the song.

One-third of the Mandan and Hidatsa songs contain no rhythmic unit. This proportion is lower than in the Chippewa and Sioux and higher than in the Ute songs. Fifty-seven per cent of the Mandan and Hidatsa songs contain one rhythmic unit, which is the same as the Sioux and less than the Chippewa and Ute. The tribal groups show a wide difference in songs containing two rhythmic units, this difference ranging from 1 per cent in the Chippewa to 18 per cent in the Ute. It is important to note that the Chippewa may be considered the tribe that is farthest advanced toward civilization, while the Ute is lowest in that scale of attainment.

Few of the Mandan and Hidatsa garden songs contain a rhythmic unit, but in the songs of eagle catching and in all the songs of societies a rhythmic unit appears with frequency. Half of the Mandan and Hidatsa war songs contain a rhythmic unit. This is in contrast to the Chippewa war songs, 70 per cent of which contain a rhythmic unit, and the Sioux war songs, 64 per cent of which show such a unit.

TABLE 18.—*Rhythm of drum.*—Among the Mandan and Hidatsa the drum appears to be used chiefly to mark the time of the song. It is usually synchronous with the voice. There is a lack of the elaboration which was shown by the special drumbeat for each sort

[b] Terminology, throughout the present study of Indian music, is intended chiefly as a guide to the student and a means of calling attention to certain peculiarities which seem of interest and importance in the study of Indian music.

of Ute dance song and by the several distinct drumbeats of the Chippewa or the "fancy drumming" noted among the Sioux. In 87 per cent of the Mandan and Hidatsa songs the drumbeat is without division into accented groups. The time unit is a quarter note (one drum beat with each melody count) more frequently than it is an eighth note (two drumbeats with each melody count). In one song, which is in triple time, we find two drumbeats in each measure, the voice and drum being synchronous on the first count of the measure.

SUMMARY.—In observing this material as a whole we note that the accented tones in 41 per cent of the songs suggest a fundamental tone and the simplest of its upper partials—namely, the octave, twelfth, second octave, and the major third in that octave. These tones, if placed in the compass of one octave, constitute the major triad. From this fact it appears that these Indians are semiconsciously aware of certain tones which, in various intensities, are naturally present in other tones and that they find pleasure in these tones, amplifying them by other tones according to their liking. The minor third is the interval of most frequent occurrence except the major second and is approximately the average interval in the songs under consideration. This interval appears to be especially pleasing to uncultured peoples and has been noted by explorers as well as by students of primitive music. It seems reasonable to conclude, in view of these observations, that a semiconscious conformity to natural law and a certain form of estheticism are governing factors in the music of these Indians.

Resemblances between the songs of the Chippewa, Sioux, Mandan, and Hidatsa occur more frequently than between these tribes and the mountain-dwelling Utes, but these resemblances are not sufficient, either in number or importance, to justify an opinion that the physical environment of these tribes has had an effect on the form of their songs. On the contrary, the differences between the classes of songs within a tribe may be regarded as an indication that the mental concept which prompts a song has a distinct influence on the melody and rhythm of the song.

Points of difference in these songs are noted as follows: The Mandan and Hidatsa songs differ from those of the other tribes under analysis in a more frequent use of rests and syncopations (*nota legato*) and in a downward glissando at the close of a phrase or of the entire song. The five tribes under analysis differ among themselves chiefly in the use of the drum. Certain ordinary drumbeats are used by all the tribes, but in addition to these each tribe has certain peculiarities of drumming which are more or less pronounced. The differences between the songs of these tribes are no greater,

and even may be said to be less, than the differences between some of the classes of songs within the tribes.

Comparative Group Analyses of Mandan and Hidatsa Songs

The several groups of these songs are found to differ among themselves in melodic and rhythmic peculiarities. These differences may not, in every instance, be evident to the unaccustomed ear, but they appear in the analyses and the graphic plots of the songs. Their presence is an evidence of the correctness of the Indian in asserting that he "can tell the kind of song when he hears it." No explanation of these differences is offered, nor does it seem necessary at this time to attribute them to any definite causes.

The first 10 songs are those of the societies said to have been organized by Good Fur Robe, and they may therefore be considered among the oldest songs of the series. Seven of these songs have a range of more than an octave, 7 have a rhythmic unit, and 18 per cent of the entire number of intervals are fourths. In other respects the songs vary, showing no group characteristic. The songs in major and minor tonality are equal in number.

Following these are eight songs that were sung in the gardens. These are a distinct type, and we note that seven are major, none have a compass of less than an octave, and they are chiefly melodic in structure. They are not rhythmic in character like the preceding group, as only two of the eight songs contain a rhythmic unit; neither do they resemble the former songs in their progressions, as 84 per cent of the entire number of intervals contain two, three, or four semitones, being intervals of a major second, a minor third, or a major third.

Following this group are the songs connected with eagle catching, all of which were said to have been received from animals and to have what may be termed "supernatural power." These songs have a small compass and large progressions, contrasted with the group next preceding, in which the compass was large and the progressions small. Only two of these songs have a range of more than an octave, while 78 per cent of the intervals contain other than two, three, or four semitones. All are characterized by a wide variety of progressions. They are rhythmic in character, all but two having a rhythmic unit, and they are strongly harmonic in feeling, only two of the 12 songs being purely melodic in structure.

The next 16 songs (Nos. 31–46) show a remarkable evenness. This section includes songs of legends, folk tales, and Mandan women's societies. The only point of interest is that all but three of these songs contain a rhythmic unit.

With the next songs we enter the Hidatsa material and that in which the two tribes are more or less mingled.

The 11 songs of the Stone Hammer and Fox Societies follow, and are combined for convenience of observation. We note that 43 per cent of the intervals are whole tones (major seconds), an unusually large proportion of this interval. All but two contain rhythmic units, are major in tonality, and begin with a downward progression. The next 11 songs are those of the Dog Society in its various divisions and show striking peculiarities of their own. Major and minor are about equally divided. The range is large, only one song having a compass as small as an octave, while one has a range of 14 tones. They are strongly harmonic in feeling, only one song having a purely melodic structure. Attention is directed to the feeling for the dominant in these songs, five of which begin and eight end on the dominant. Every song except one has a rhythmic unit and contains a change of measure lengths.

The next eight songs (Nos. 69–76) are in some respects the opposite of the preceding group. These are songs of the Buffalo and Horse Societies, all of which are melodic in structure. All but two are major in tonality and all except one begin on the accented portion of the measure, which is an unusually large proportion. Like the other songs of societies, they are rhythmic in character and all but two contain a rhythmic unit.

The war songs (Nos. 77–102) are not rhythmic in character, only half the number containing a rhythmic unit. In six of these songs there is no change of measure length, which indicates an unusually steady time. Fourteen begin with an upward progression, which is a proportion larger than the average. In these, as in the songs of the Buffalo and Horse Societies, there is a strong feeling for the dominant, five beginning and 14 ending on that tone. Twelve of these songs are purely melodic in structure.

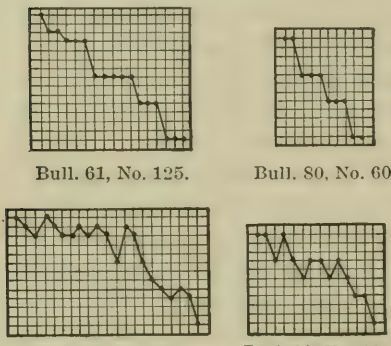
The remaining eight songs are of various classes, grouped as "miscellaneous," and, like the songs connected with legends and folk tales (Nos. 31 to 36), they are quite evenly divided in all their characteristics. Three of the eight contain no rhythmic unit, which is smaller than the average percentage indicated in Table 17, page 25.

SUMMARY.—The general conclusion from the foregoing analysis is that many of the groups of songs have individual characteristics. It is interesting to note that the songs of the Dog Society are chiefly harmonic in structure, while all the songs of the Buffalo and Horse Societies are melodic. The contrast between these groups is further shown in their graphic outlines (pls. 11, 12). Attention is directed to the lack of rhythmic unit in the war songs, combined with an unusually large proportion of songs containing no change of measure

lengths. In all these groups we note that songs with a large compass frequently have a predominance of small intervals (one, two, three, or four semitones), while songs with a small compass contain an unusually large number of larger intervals (five or more semitones).

Graphic Representation or "Plots"[46]

Five classes, or "prevailing types," were noted in the plots of the Sioux songs. The first two are general throughout the songs and do not appear to be connected with any particular idea. These two classes or types appear also in the present series, and for comparison the Sioux songs selected as representative of these classes are here reprinted together with similar songs of the Mandan and Hidatsa (fig. 2).



Bull. 61, No. 125. Bull. 80, No. 60.

Bull. 61, No. 68. Bull. 80, No. 20.

Fig. 2.—Plots of Sioux songs compared with Mandan and Hidatsa songs.

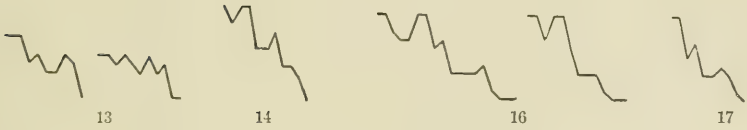
The present series contains no songs of sadness, which constituted Class E of the Sioux songs. Classes C and D comprised songs expressing positiveness or self-confidence, and songs connected with animals, each class showing a peculiarity of outline. Songs of similar nature in the present series show somewhat similar characteristics. It is not the intention, however, to attribute undue importance to a connection between the idea of a song and a certain outline.

In order to present this subject in a form which is more convenient for observation the coordinate lines, shown in figure 2, are omitted and the plots are reduced in size (pls. 11, 12). A descending

[46] A form of graphic representation, or "plotting," of melodies was devised by the writer in order that the trend of Indian melodies might be more apparent to the eye than in the musical transcriptions. The general method employed is similar to that used in showing graphically the course of a moving object. The loci of the object at given periods of time are determined and recorded, the several positions being connected by straight lines. In any use of this method the interest centers in the several points at which the object is located, it being understood that the lines connecting these points are used merely as an aid to observation. In the present adaptation of this method the pitch of the accented tones in a melody is indicated by dots placed at the intersections of coordinate lines, the horizontal coordinates representing scale degrees and the vertical coordinates representing measure lengths. These dots are connected by straight lines, though the course of the melody between the accented tones would, in many instances, vary widely from these lines if it were accurately plotted. The use of accented tones exclusively in analyzing these songs has already been employed, the structure of the melodies being determined by the pitch of contiguous accented tones (see Table 8, footnote). Since the sole purpose of these plots is to show the trend of the melodies, it seems permissible to omit from the representation not only the unaccented tones, but also a distinction between whole tones and semitones in progressions and a distinction between double and triple time in measure lengths.

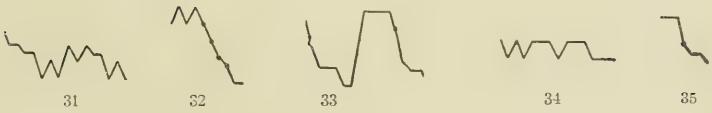
Songs of Goose Women and Black Mouth Societies

Garden Songs



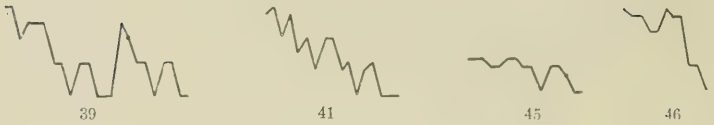
Songs connected with Eagle Catching

Songs connected with Legends

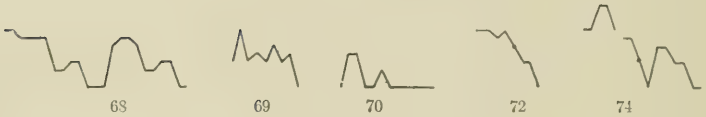


PLOTS OF MANDAN AND HIDATSA SONGS

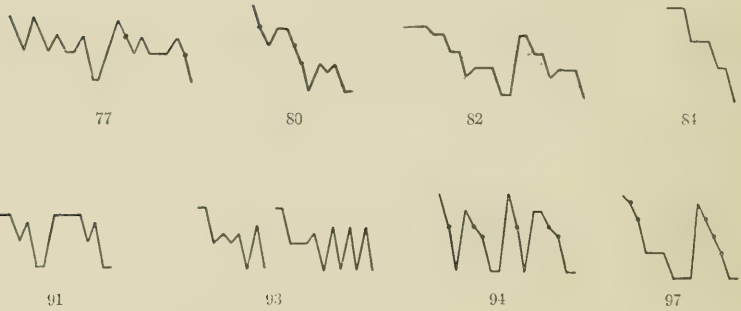
Songs of Women's Societies



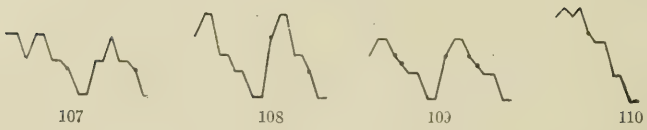
Songs of Men's Societies



War Songs



Miscellaneous Songs



PLOTS OF MANDAN AND HIDATSA SONGS

trend is evident in all the classes of songs, but the plots selected for illustration are those most typical of each class.

Another form of plotting, which shows all the progressions in the melody, is used with Nos. 72 and 92, and is given in connection with the analyses of those songs.

GOOD FUR ROBE[47]

Throughout the study of the Mandan and Hidatsa there runs an interesting comparison between the beliefs which were held by these tribes in the past and those of the present time. An instance of this is afforded by the beliefs concerning Good Fur Robe and the story with which his name is associated. According to this story (p. 7) the Mandans once lived beneath the earth. Good Fur Robe is said to have been their chief at that time, and to have established certain organizations and customs for the good of the tribe. There may be persons on the Fort Berthold Reservation who still believe the story of the grapevine, but all the writer's informants stated that "it is *said*" the tribe came to the earth in this manner, declining to express a personal opinion in the matter. However, when asked whether they believed that Good Fur Robe was a tradition or a man, they replied without hesitation that he was a living chief, like the other chiefs, but much wiser than they. It is interesting to note that the beneficent character of this traditional chief, or culture hero, has made him a living personality in the minds of those who, from contact with the white man, have lost faith in the old legends. He is still to them a human leader, kindly, far-sighted, and wonderful in his power.

Good Fur Robe always strove for the highest good of the people. He wanted them to have plenty of corn and vegetables, so he "purified" the seed, making it fruitful; he wanted the children to be healthy and the young men to succeed in war, so he organized the Goose Women Society, which, in addition to its other functions, had power to benefit the people (see pp. 39–47); and he wanted the village to be secure, so he organized the Black Mouth Society for its defence. Associated with Good Fur Robe were two chiefs and their "sister." The chief next in power was Head Rattle, the third was Rawhide Loop, and their sister's name was Swinging Corn.

[47] The Mandan equivalent of this word was given by James Holding Eagle as Mi'hiši, meaning "robe with heavy, handsome fur on it." Dr. Gilbert L. Wilson, in personal conversation with the writer, stated that the full form of the word is Mí'-he-ĥi'-ši, from *mí'-hĕ*, robe, *ĥi'*, fur, and *ši*, good, and that "when the syllable *hĕ* follows a vowel it is often omitted, or nearly so, if pronounced rapidly." The name was given the chief because of a particularly fine fur robe which he wore. Dr. Gilbert states that this was the hide of a 2-year-old buffalo cow, and that the chief wore it with the hair outside.

The Office of Corn Priest

The corn and the buffalo were the chief subsistence of the Plains tribes, and the extent to which the procuring of these entered into their worship is an interesting study. The Omaha appear to have had the most highly developed rituals and beliefs relating to the corn and its cultivation.[48] There are corn origin myths among many Indian tribes and a wealth of corn legends in the southwest, while the Pueblos have many clans named for varieties of corn. Among the Mandan and Hidatsa the Corn Priest and the rites associated with him constituted the agency for securing an abundant supply of corn; and buffalo dances were held by the people as a means of obtaining these animals for food. Such dances were distinct from dances of the Buffalo Society (p. 138) and formed part of a ceremony known as the Okeepa. The Buffalo dance is described by Maximilian[49] and by Catlin[50] in connection with the Okeepa. Boller mentions a similar ceremony called the "Bull Medicine," having for its object the securing of buffalo and also success in war and in the capture of horses.[51] The origin of the Dance Society is given on pages 84 and 85.

Since the food supply was a constant source of anxiety to primitive people, it is not strange that a man who claimed to control that supply was regarded as a man of supernatural power. It is impossible to translate into English the religious concepts of an alien race without using words which are associated with the religion of the white race. In preceding works it is explained that the Sioux word *wakaŋ'* and the Chippewa *manido'* are purely native terms and that their significance must be largely inferred from the connection in which they are used. (See Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., footnotes, pp. 85, 88.) The Mandan word of this character is *ĭo'pinis*, which is somewhat imperfectly expressed by the English word "holy." Instances of its use in the present work are as follows: He who was qualified to perform certain rites and to fructify the seed of corn or vegetables was called *koĭó pinikus*, freely translated "priest;" the mysterious beings who brought the Little River Women Society and its songs to the Mandan were called *maĭo' pinimi*, translated "spirit women"; the old man who made a wand for a novitiate of the Stone Hammer Society offered a petition to *ma'ĭopaĭktĭ'a*, literally "great medicine," the word *ĭo'pa* meaning "charm or spell." The word *maĭo'pinidĕ*, occurring in song No. 4, is translated "I am holy." When the Corn Priest purified the seed, he was called *ko'haytĕ* (corn) *kaka'naka* (purifier), the latter word meaning literally "to

[48] See Fletcher and La Flesche, The Omaha Tribe, pp. 261–269. Similar rites among the Osage have been intensively studied by Mr. La Flesche.

[49] Maximilian, Travels, pt. II, pp. 324–333.

[50] Catlin, "O-kee-pa," pp. 16–25.

[51] Boller, Among the Indians, pp. 100–111.

wipe off impurities." This term was applied to the Corn Priest in only one of his ceremonial activities.

The duties of Corn Priest were twofold in character and comprised the distribution of seed which he had in his possession, and the fructifying, or "purifying" of seed which was brought to him for that purpose. The first was performed every year in the spring, but the second did not always occur. Concerning the distribution of seed, it was said that the Corn Priest kept a supply of every variety of corn and knew what variety each family usually planted, for he noticed the scaffolds in the fall with their braids of drying corn. If by any chance he forgot the variety, he asked the woman who made the request and was informed whether her family raised white, yellow, red, "pink," or other corn. No one knew where the Corn Priest obtained his seed corn, but he always had an abundance. The request for seed was always accompanied by a gift, and he gave each woman a few kernels which she mixed with her own corn, thus rendering it productive.

The ceremony of purifying the corn was performed in accordance with the instructions of Good Fur Robe. A "map of the earth," drawn on buckskin, and a ceremonial pipe, to be described in a subsequent paragraph, were used at this time. The corn or other seed was spread on the ground, and the buckskin map was hung between the seed and the Corn Priest in such a position that its lower edge rested on the ground. The Corn Priest sprinkled the seed with water and sang certain songs, but these died with Moves Slowly, the last man who had the right to sing them. It is said that neither drum nor rattle was used with these songs. According to Will and Hyde the Corn Priest "then takes brushes of mint and performs the actual cleansing by brushing over all of the seed, and all of the people as well."[52] After performing this ceremony the Corn Purifier was "holy" until the harvest. He painted himself and stayed in his lodge, eating only dried vegetables and corn of the previous year. It was believed that if he ate so much as one kernel of fresh corn a frost would come that night and destroy the entire crop. A Corn Priest who for some reason had not performed the ceremony of purifying the seed was under no restrictions and could eat whatever he liked. Among the regulations pertaining to the season was a rule that no one should use a knife on a cornstalk at the time of the purifying of the corn. If an extended drought endangered the crop, it was customary for a group of men, or one of the men's societies, to gather a large quantity of gifts and take them to the Corn Priest with a request that he secure rain. If he were unable to do this, the gifts were taken to the medicine men, each of

[52] Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri, p. 263. Subsequent duties of the Corn Purifier are enumerated on pages 264–268 of this work.

whom in turn tried to bring rain.[53] Otter Woman said that her father, Black Tongue, was often called upon and that the people "poured a great deal of water on his head, and he secured rain for the corn." Two of Black Tongue's songs are included in this series as Nos. 16 and 17.

In the summer evenings, after it was dark, the Goose Women sometimes went to the lodge of the Corn Priest and sang with him. The Corn Priest was closely associated with this organization and had a part in its ceremonies (see p. 45).

The Instructions of Good Fur Robe

When Good Fur Robe, the first Corn Priest, grew to old age and realized that he had not long to live, he selected a man as his successor and instructed him in the duties of the office. He also instructed certain of his descendants so they could act as Corn Priests and gave them a special commission that, when he and the other male chiefs died, they should keep the three skulls, saying that as long as they did this the people would have good crops of corn.[54] His instructions were obeyed and it is said that the skulls are now in the possession of the only descendant of the three chiefs.

Good Fur Robe told his successors to keep a "map of the earth," which he drew on buckskin, and the ceremonial pipe which was smoked only by the Corn Priest. The map and pipe were destroyed by fire when Moves Slowly's lodge was burned and were never replaced. This fire took place prior to 1884, but the exact date could not be ascertained. A tradition concerning the origin of the ceremonial pipe is remembered by a few of the old people. They say that Good Fur Robe wanted to make such a pipe and that his brother sought for suitable material. He found the quarry of red pipestone located in what is now the State of South Dakota and called it to the attention of Good Fur Robe, who refused to use it for a ceremonial pipe because the red color symbolized blood. The red pipestone was therefore used only for common pipes and the ceremonial pipe was made of wood.[55] When Good Fur Robe had finished making this pipe, he said, "This pipe represents the earth. It is one pipe, yet it can be taken apart, the stem from the bowl. The land on the north of the Missouri River can be represented by

[53] Informants differed on this point, some saying that the request was made first of the medicine men, and that if they failed, it was taken to the Corn Priest.

[54] It is the custom of some tribes of the southern plains to place the skull of a chief in their shrine. Pepper and Wilson state that the "Hidatsa eagle-man" said in his old age, "My skull and my friend's skull shall be the medicines of my band . . . And so long as my skull is thus kept in honor, my spirit will remain with it to help the people and be their guide." (An Hidasta shrine and the beliefs respecting it, p. 293.)

[55] A wooden pipe was among the articles in the Hidatsa shrine. See Pepper and Wilson, An Hidatsa shrine, p. 285.

one part of the pipe and that on the south by the other part, but they are joined together as one."

SOCIETIES ORGANIZED BY GOOD FUR ROBE

The Goose Women Society

Good Fur Robe organized this society and it is said to have been "holy," because Good Fur Robe was at the head of it and he was a "holy man" (priest). He selected certain women as the first members of the society and divided them into two companies, telling one company to paint their mouths black and the other to paint their mouths blue. He also gave them certain songs and told them how to conduct their ceremony. He said this society would "look after the corn," and that if there were an early frost the Goose Women must bring presents to him so that he could prevent damage to the crop. Good Fur Robe told the man whom he trained as his successor that he must sing with the Goose Women when they danced and select two others to sing with him. In later years four men sometimes sang at the dances of the Goose Women. In addition to their duties in connection with the corn and the holding of a ceremony in the spring, the Goose Women were believed to have special powers for good. Thus, if a child were ailing, its parents took presents to the Goose Women, and it is said that after a time the child grew straight and sturdy as the young corn. If a young man were going on the warpath he might betake himself to the Goose Women and ask them to give him success. The exact nature of their help was not ascertained except that they "sang hymns which were prayers." From the time of Good Fur Robe until the old customs were lost in the life of civilization this gentle sisterhood was perpetuated, being an honored and important part of the tribal organization. Young girls of suitable temperament were selected and trained for membership, the Goose Women watching constantly for those adapted to a place among them.

The character and traditional origin of the society is thus emphasized in order, so far as possible, to vivify the early life of the Mandan. The writer's informants did not indicate the Goose Women as an age society in the usual acceptance of the term. Lowie states that "it is evident that the Goose Society is of a distinctly more religious character than either the Skunk or the Enemy Society,[56] and presents a detailed study of the organization.[57] Maximilian lists it only as an Hidatsa organization, describing it as a medicine feast under the name of "the corn dance feast of the

[56] Lowie, Societies of the Hidatsa and Mandan Indians, p. 338.
[57] Ibid., pp. 323, 330–338.

women." His account has many resemblances to that herewith presented.[58] Curtis describes an Hidatsa ceremony in honor of the mythical Old-woman-who-never-dies, for the purpose of securing abundant crops of corn.[59]

Ceremony and Meeting of the Goose Women Society

When the geese went away in the fall a woman might say, "I promise, O geese, to give a feast for the Goose Women when you return in the spring." Such a woman began her preparations for the feast before the coming of the geese and several of her friends helped her. Together they made a rack of poles with sticks laid across the poles, and on this rack they hung slices of beef or other meat and of fat. This feast was held in connection with the ceremony of the Goose Women Society which took place in the spring of the year.[60]

The ceremony of the Goose Women took place during the day, and its meeting, with dancing, was held that evening. The ceremony was held in the open air, near the rack of poles on which was hung the meat. Coming from one of the lodges, the Goose Women appeared carrying large sheaves of fresh sage in their arms. Four songs were sung during the ceremony, exclusive of that sung by the Corn Priest alone. During the first and second songs (Nos. 1 and 2) the Goose Women swayed to and fro like the corn in the field. The third and fourth songs of the group (Nos. 3 and 5) were connected with a trance which formed part of the ceremony. All these were "sacred songs."

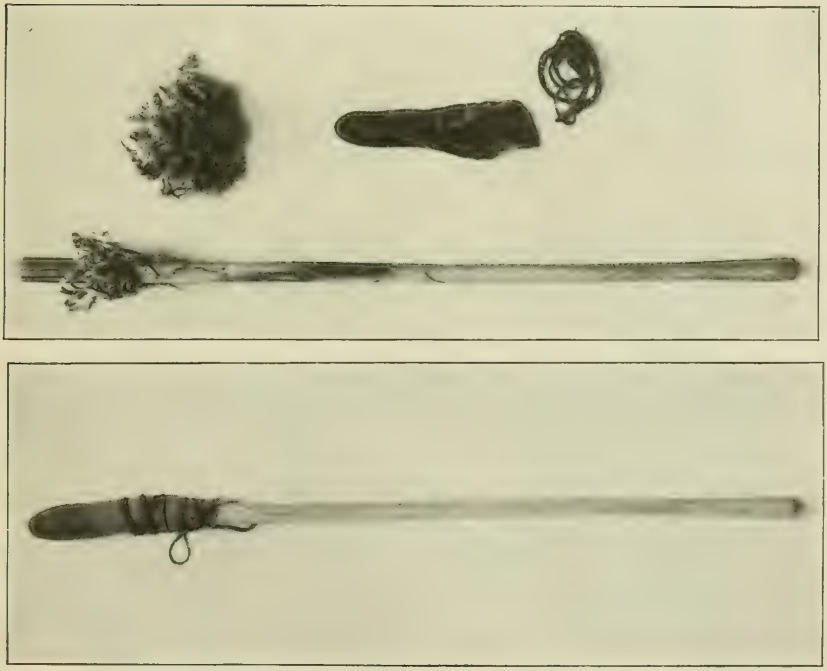
In all the songs of the Goose Women Society it was customary for three or four men to sing with the women, this being one of the regulations imposed by Good Fur Robe when he organized the society. Each of these men beat upon a hand drum similar to those used in the men's societies, but much smaller and decorated all around the rawhide head with goose tracks placed close together near the edge of the drum. The specimen illustrated (pl. 13, *a*) is very old and is in the possession of the North Dakota Historical Society. The rawhide is so discolored with age that only one goose track is discernible. This track is 1½ inches in length and about the same in width. The drum is warped by the strain of the rawhide, and

[58] Maximilian, Travels, pt. II, pp. 334–336.

[59] Curtis, The North American Indian, vol. IV, pp. 148–152.

[60] Maximilian mentions an autumn feast of the Goose Women, and Will and Hyde state that the autumn ceremony was considered more important than that held in the spring. "Meat racks were set up and the women danced four dances, just as in the spring corn dance; but the fall dance was primarily a buffalo ceremony, intended to insure a good fall hunt." (Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri, p. 275.) A connection between corn and the buffalo as important articles of food has already been mentioned in this paper (p. 36).

a. Goose Women Society drum



b. Drumming stick used with Goose Women Society drum

a. Otter Woman

b. Bear-on-the-flat

c. Pan

measures 15¼ inches at its largest and 13¾ inches at its smallest diameter. The thickness of the drum varies from 3 to 3⅜ inches. The rawhide is fastened across the back of the drum with strips of hide that cross in the middle, forming a handhold (see also pl. 9, *b*). The drumming stick was made for the writer by Ben Benson, who is familiar with the usage of the society. The stick is new, but the buffalo-hide covering of the end is very old and apparently has been used on a similar drumming stick. On removing this covering it was found that the wood at the end of the stick had been scraped and turned downward, the inner bark being left in narrow strips, between which were 12 spaces. This form suggests a 12-row ear of corn with the silk turned downward, but as the writer had left the reservation it was impossible to secure information concerning the complete symbolism of the stick. Eagle feathers were placed around the end of the drumming stick, and the buffalo-hide covering was held in place by a strip of the same material (pl. 13, *b*). A drum decorated with goose tracks is noted on page 91.

Wounded Face, who contributed a portion of the information concerning this society, was a singer at its last meetings.

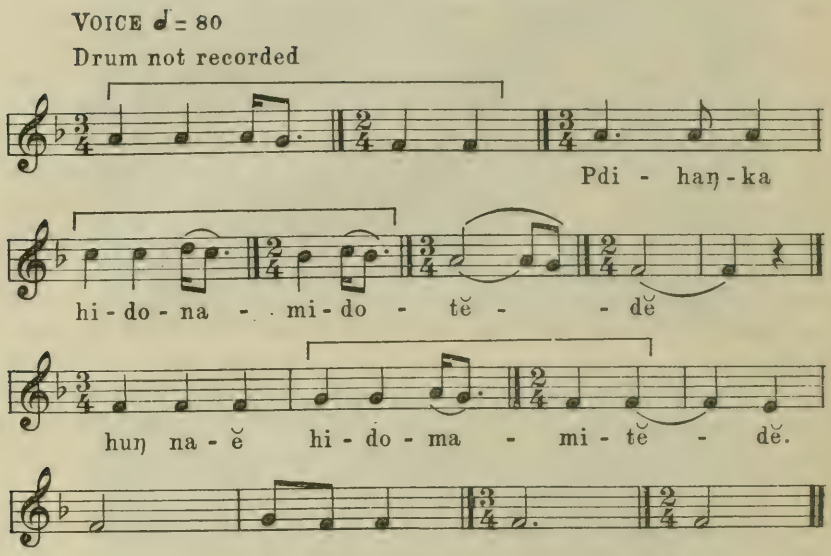
The first song is of unusual interest. Wounded Face said it is called the captive song because of the following legend: Many years ago a Goose woman was captured by an enemy and taken far away, but she managed to escape and started toward home. As she traveled wearily a flock of geese flew above her. They flew low and sang this song, which she learned from them. The words of the song appear to be connected with Old-woman-who-never-dies, a mythical character associated with many of the agricultural beliefs and practices of the Mandan and Hidatsa. She resembles the Mother Corn and the Spider Woman of certain tribes farther south, though differing from them in many respects. Maximilian states that "The old woman who never dies sends, in the spring, the waterfowl, swans, geese, and ducks as symbols of the kinds of grain cultivated by the Indians. The wild goose signifies maize; the swan, the gourd; and the duck, beans. It is the old woman who causes these plants to grow, and, therefore, she sends these birds as her signs and representatives."[61] The Old-woman-who-never-dies was called Mother, and as the birds were her representatives, the geese and the Goose Women might, as in this instance, address one another as mother and daughter.

The ceremonial use of this and the four songs next following has already been noted.

[61] Maximilian, Travels, pt. II, p. 335. Cf. also Will and Spinden, The Mandans, p. 141.

No. 1. The Captive Song (Catalogue No. 808)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

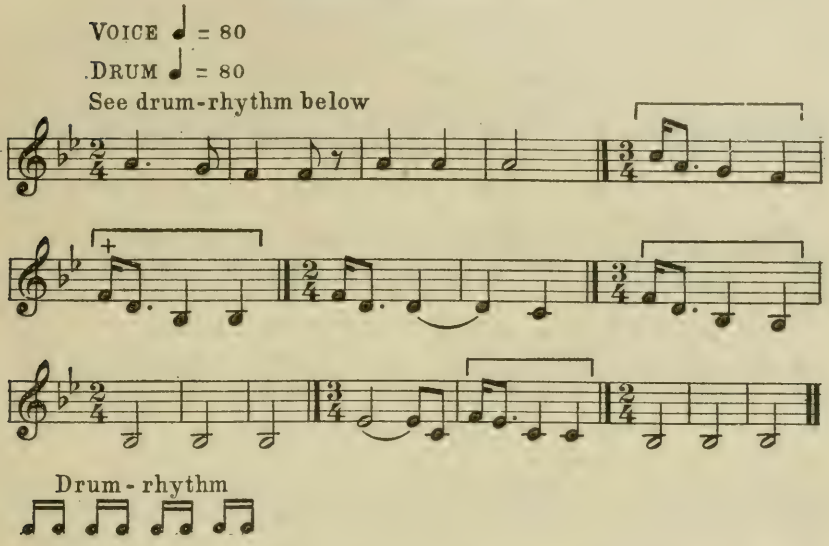
pdi'haŋka.....my youngest daughter
hido'namido'tĕdĕ.....here you are
huŋ.....yes
na'ĕ.....mother
hido'mamitĕdĕ.....I am here

Analysis.—This song contains several peculiarities which occur in other songs of the present series. Most interesting of these is a downward glissando, which followed the tone in the eighth measure and the final tone of the song. It is a trailing of the voice which can not be indicated by notation. Among other songs containing a similar glissando, either during the melody or at the close, are Nos. 19, 23, and 29. In this song the compass of the glissando was approximately a whole tone. The song comprises two periods of eight measures each. This gives an effect of rhythmic regularity, but the sequence of measure lengths is different in the two periods. A rest occurs at the close of the first period. Other songs containing rests are Nos. 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 21, 34, 38, 57, 65, 74, 92, 93, 103, and 104. Syncopations, or *nota legato*, occur also in Nos. 47, 50, 52, 53, 73, 81, 85, 89, 96, 98, and 110. A comparison of these three peculiarities in songs previously analyzed is noted on page 31.

No. 2. Song of the Goose Women Society (a)

(Catalogue No. 809)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



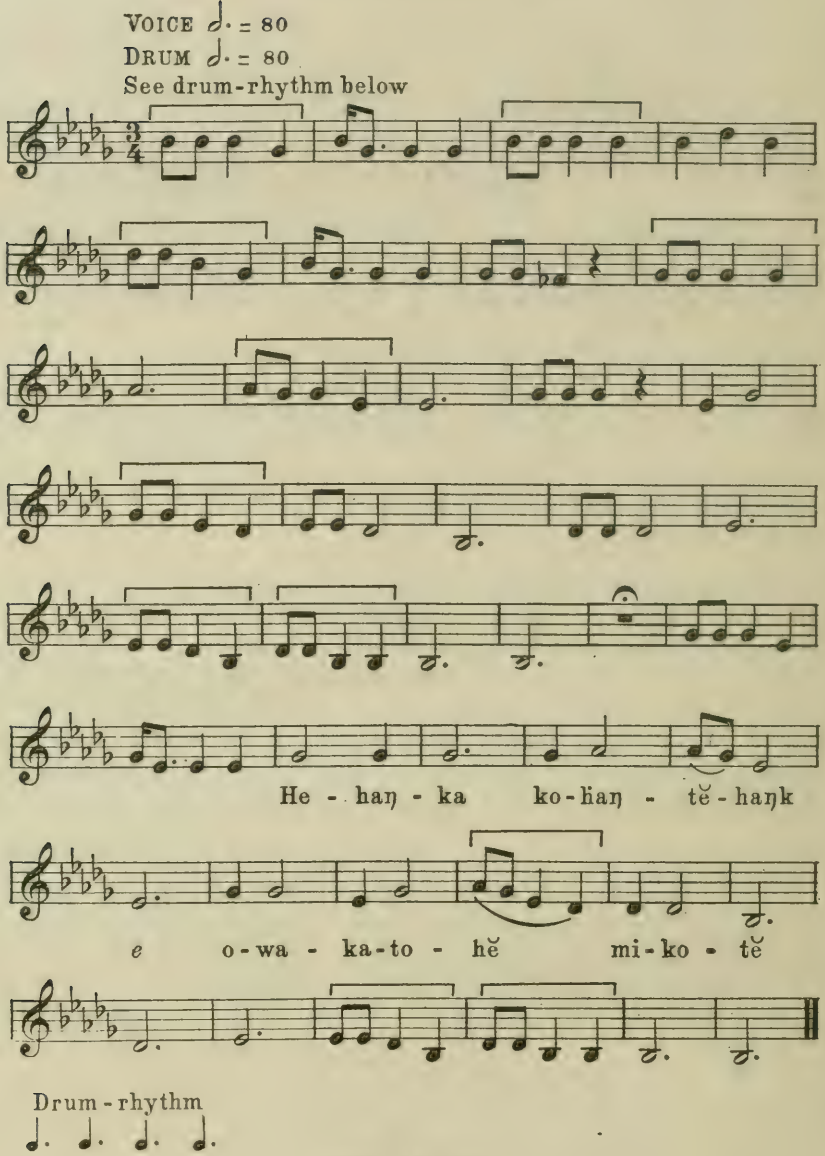
Drum-rhythm

Analysis.—Three renditions of this song were recorded and in them all the tones were given with reasonable accuracy, but the progression from one tone to another was by a glissando which can not be transcribed. The melodic interest of the song lies in the fifth and sixth measures, which contain the descending triads C–A–F and F–D–B flat. The rhythmic interest lies in the variation of the rhythmic unit which appears in the seventh and eighth measures, the second count of the unit being prolonged to twice its length.

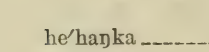
The following song is among those considered "sacred." In the old days the women became unconscious during the singing of this song, and it is said that corn often came from their mouths. Sometimes little ducks, or even singing birds, came from the mouths of the Goose Women while they were in this trance.

No. 3. "My Daughter" (Catalogue No. 810)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



Drum-rhythm



WORDS (MANDAN)

he′haŋka	my daughter
ko′ĥaŋtehaŋk	this corn
owa′katohĕ miko′tĕ	that I can never use up

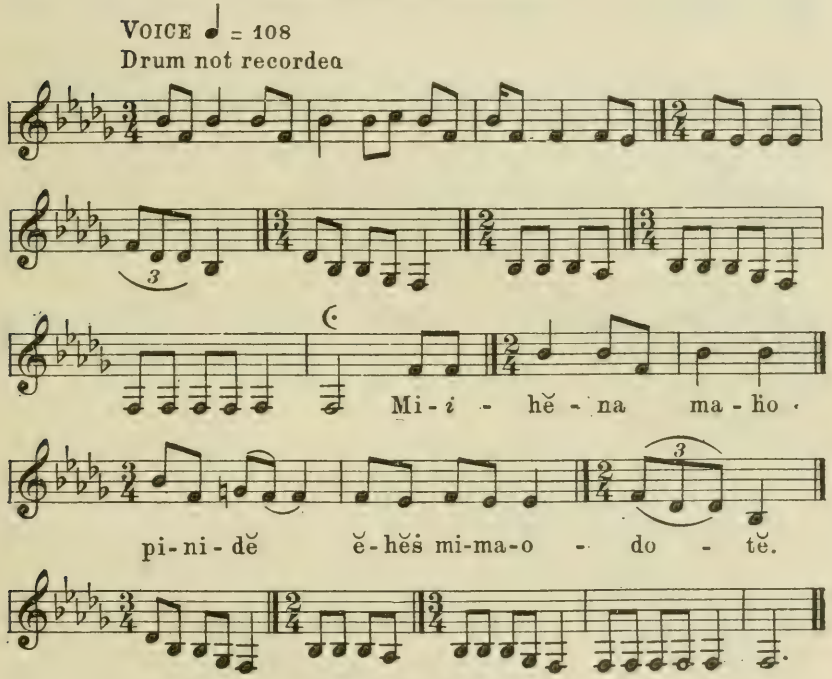
Analysis.—This melody has a compass of 10 tones, yet with one exception the intervals are small, containing two, three, or four semi-

tones. The largest interval is an ascending minor sixth. The small intervals comprise 7 major thirds, 17 minor thirds, and 19 major seconds. It is interesting, though not unusual, to note the frequency of the minor third in a song of major tonality. The rhythmic unit is short and repeated throughout the song. In this instance the entire measure length is indicated as the metric unit, the voice dividing this period of time into three and the drum into two parts. Drum and voice were synchronous on the first count of each measure.

The following song was sung by the Corn Priest alone, while the women were in a trance and the water birds were coming from their mouths. This is one of the "sacred songs" of the society, and in it the "power that is in the Goose Women" is speaking.

No. 4. Song of the Corn Priest (Catalogue No. 812)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

mi'hĕna ---------- a woman
malio'pinidĕ ---------- "I am holy"
ĕ'hĕs ---------- said
mi'maö'dotĕ ---------- I am the one

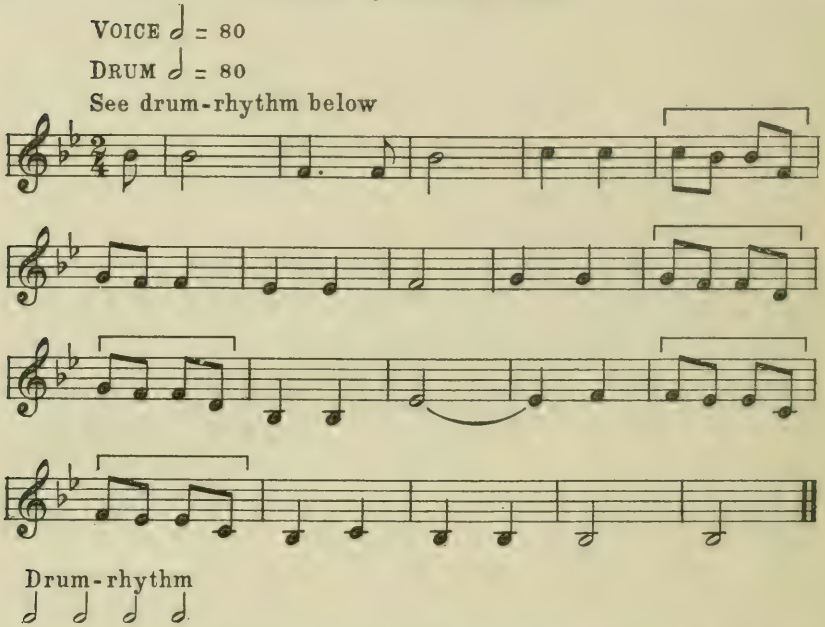
Analysis.—This song is harmonic in structure and contains all the tones of the octave except the second. The framework of the melody consists of the descending fourth B flat–F, followed by the descending triad F–D–B flat and the descending fourth B flat–F in the lower octave. About one-third of the intervals are fourths. Several renditions of the song were recorded and show no material differences.

This song was sung after the Goose Women had recovered from their trance and been "cleansed."

No. 5. Song of the Goose Women Society (b)

(Catalogue No. 811)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



Analysis.—The tempo of this song is similar to that of No. 3, this tempo being steadily maintained with drum and voice synchronous on the first of each measure. Six complete and one partial rendition were recorded. The pitch was gradually raised during these renditions, but the entire variation is less than a semitone (see No. 13). The principal intervals are the fourth and the major second.

At the conclusion of the ceremony it was customary for certain young girls to take home with them for safe-keeping the sage bundles carried by the Goose Women. These bundles were regarded as "sacred," and the young girls entrusted with them were probably girls who, at a later time, became members of the society. In the evening they took the bundles to the lodge where the Goose Women

were assembled, and joined in the dancing. From time to time a Goose Woman would ask one of these girls to leave the dance and go to her home. There she spread a robe on the ground and gave the girl a feast. The girl ate all she could and her parents were permitted to take what was left except a little which the girl herself was required to take to the singers in the lodge. After all the young girls had thus been entertained by the Goose Women and had returned to the lodge the singers sang a "cleansing song," and the young girls "cleansed" themselves with sprigs of fresh sage. Meantime the sheaves of sage were placed upright against one of the posts of the lodge. At the close of the meeting the Goose Women carried the bundles of sage to their own homes. As they left the lodge a buffalo robe was spread for them to walk upon, and they stepped on it as they went from the lodge, carrying the sheaves of sage in their arms.

The Black Mouth Society [62]

After Good Fur Robe had organized the Goose Women Society he selected the bravest men of the tribe and organized a society of warriors. According to Bear-on-the-flat the name that Good Fur Robe gave the society meant "Brave Warriors." It was the duty of members of this society to defend the village and also to keep order within it. Their commands were arbitrary and obeyed by all. Good Fur Robe instructed them to blacken the lower part of their faces in the same manner as one branch of the Goose Women Society. This custom gave the society its present name. The insignia of the society consisted of two rods "about the length of a spear," to which raven skins were attached. Wounded Face said that the head of the bird was fastened tightly near the top of the rod and the body of the bird hung loosely. These rods were carried in war and a member of the society, having placed one of the rods upright in the ground, was not allowed to retreat from the place. However, if he were seen to be in mortal danger, a comrade could release him by snatching the rod and carrying it away. (Cf. Fox Society, p. 109.)

The following tradition concerning the origin of this society was related to Doctor Lowie by Wounded Face: "Long ago Good Fur Robe assembled the middle-aged men. To the leader he gave one cornstalk and to the rear man another. 'When the enemy chase you,' he instructed them, 'plant these in the ground and do not run away.' Sometimes a cornstalk has five branches at the top. Later a stick with a spearhead was made to represent the cornstalks; owl wing feathers were tied to its side, as well as crow or raven wing feathers and a raven head. . . . They painted their faces black.

[62] This is noted also among the age societies on p. 108.

The Goose Women used the same paint, because their society was founded by the same man."[63]

Meeting of the Black Mouth Society

When the Black Mouth Society held a meeting the members were seated in an open curve, the raven-rod bearers being at the ends of the curve (fig. 3). Next them were two men with rattles, which were described as "little boxes with pebbles in them." At the back of the curve were stationed four singers with large hand drums, and at some distance in front of them were two men holding pipes that were said to be "calumets" and used in negotiations of peace. These pipes were complete, with bowl and stem.[c] It was said that the pipe bearers held the pipes in front of them, chest high, using both hands and holding the mouthpiece of the pipe away from them as though offering it to someone. They stood with heads bowed, took no notice of persons around them, and kept time to the music by slightly bending their knees. They did not dance nor move from the place where they stood.

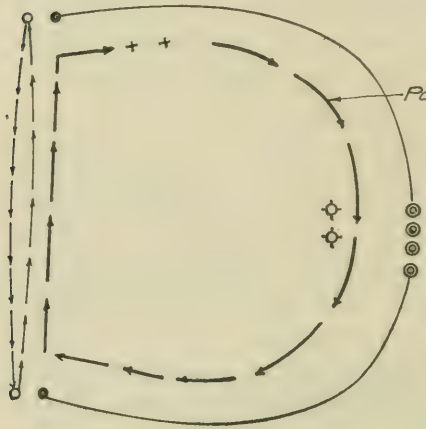


FIG. 3.—Diagram showing movements of men in ceremony of Black Mouth Society.

The raven-rod bearers walked back and forth across the entrance to the circle during the dancing, and a song was not begun until the raven-rod bearers had left their places. The men with the rattles started the songs, which were at once taken up by the singers with the drums. The rattle bearers moved around the circle, passing between the singers and the men who held the pipes. The dancers

[63] Lowie, Societies of the Hidatsa and Mandan Indians, pp. 313–314. This contains also an account of a meeting of the society.

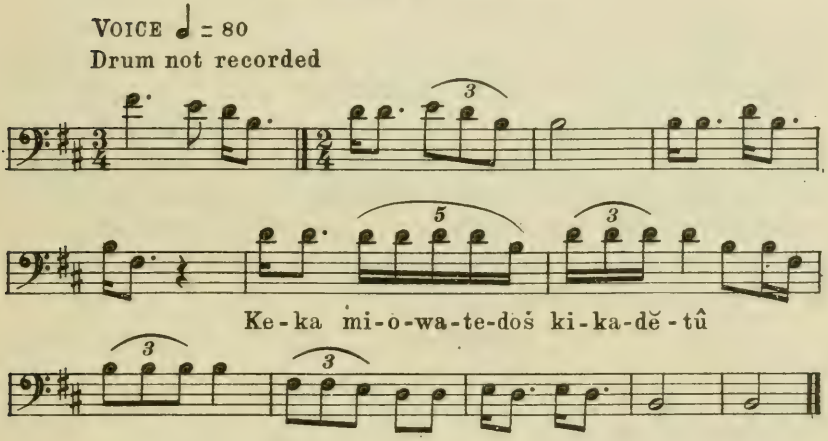
[c] Cf. "Calumet," Bull. 30, Bur. Amer. Ethn., Handbook of American Indians, pp. 191–195.

followed them. It appears that the dancers did not cross the entrance, but turned on reaching the end of the curve. The meetings of this society are said to have been dignified and impressive, the men being sometimes seated, but frequently "standing like soldiers" around the circle when they were not dancing.

Wounded Face related a tradition concerning the following song. He said that on one occasion the Black Mouth Society was holding a meeting and one of the ravens on the raven rods was heard to utter its characteristic cry. Everyone wondered which raven it was. They listened to hear if the sound were repeated. It came again, and then they knew that it came from the raven carried by a man named Skunk. The cry was considered a warning of disaster and Skunk sang this song.

No. 6. Song to the Raven (Catalogue No. 861)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



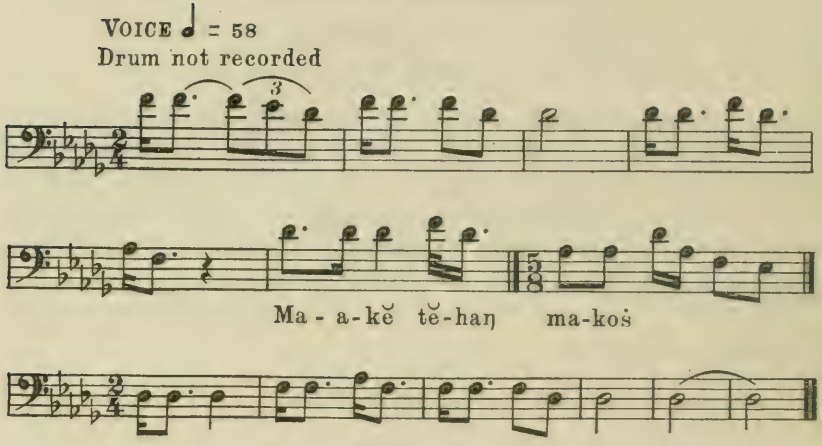
WORDS (MANDAN)

ke'ka	raven
mi'owate'doš	I am going to die
kika'dĕtû	fly away

Analysis.—It is interesting to note that only one of the five Black Mouth Society songs contains a rhythmic unit and that only one (No. 10) contains more than five scale degrees. A descending trend characterizes this melody, which is harmonic in structure. The compass is 12 tones and about four-fifths of the intervals are minor thirds and major seconds. The tone material comprises only the minor triad and fourth.

No. 7. "Earth Always Endures." (Catalogue No. 859)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



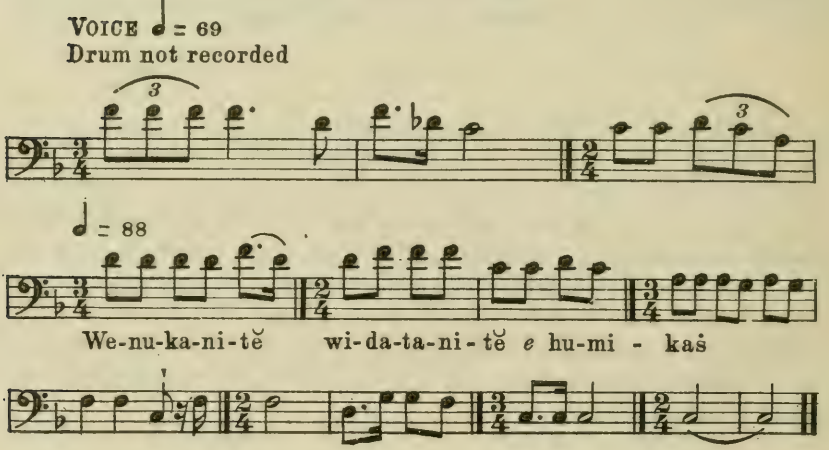
WORDS (MANDAN)

ma'akĕ	earth
tĕ'haŋ	always
makoś'	endures

Analysis.—This song, like No. 6, contains only 5 tones, or scale degrees, which in this instance are those of the major triad and second. Like No. 6, this song is harmonic in structure and has an extended compass. Two-thirds of the intervals are descending progressions, this being a frequent proportion of descending intervals in the Indian songs analyzed by the writer.

No. 8. "Enemies Are Many" (Catalogue No. 860)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



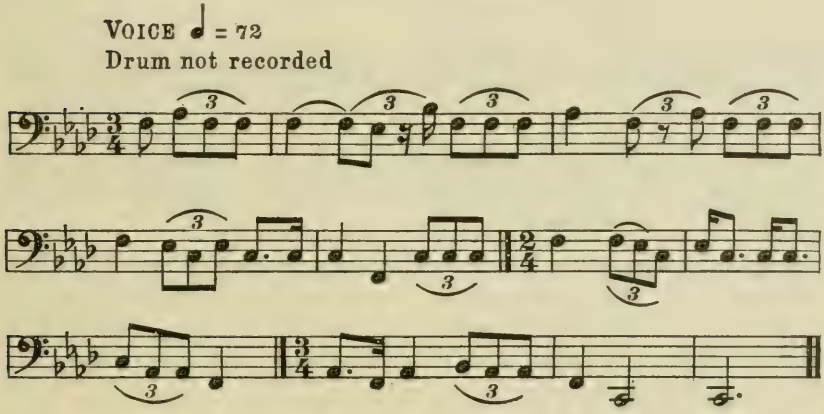
WORDS (MANDAN)

wenu'kanitĕ'_____ my comrades
wi'data'nitĕ'_____ enemies (all unfriendly tribes)
hu'mikaś_____ are many

Analysis.—In structure this song resembles Nos. 6 and 7, the range being extended and the progression being chiefly by intervals containing two or three semitones. The tone material is that of the fourth five-toned scale, and the sixth is, in one instance, lowered a semitone.

No. 9. Going to Dance (Catalogue No. 903)

Recorded by LITTLE CROW



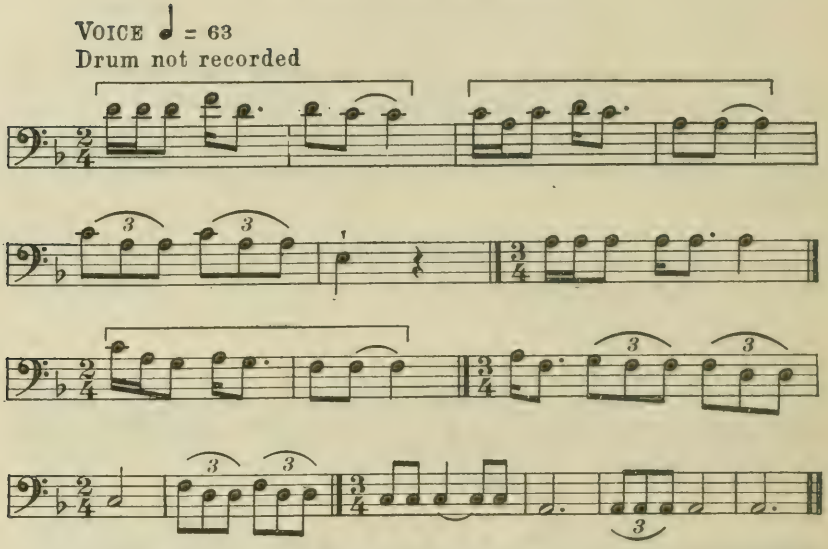
WORDS (HIDATSA)

madi'śi_____ to dance
mare'wits_____ I am going

Analysis.—The tone material of this song is that of the fourth five-toned scale, and it has a compass of 14 tones. More than half the progressions are minor thirds.

No. 10. Black Mouth Society Song (Catalogue No. 869)

Recorded by SITTING RABBIT



Analysis.—This is the only Black Mouth Society song containing a rhythmic unit. This unit occurs three times in double measures and a similar count division occurs in the seventh measure, which is in triple time. The song is minor in tonality, melodic in structure, and has a compass of 13 tones.

CUSTOMS

SINGING IN THE GARDENS

As the women were given a prominent place by Good Fur Robe in the tribal organizations, so, also, they had an important part in the economic life of the tribe. Upon the women rested the responsibility for the cultivation of the gardens, that were located a mile or more from the village. There they worked in the fields of corn, beans, squashes, and pumpkins, breaking new ground, if necessary, and carrying on their agricultural pursuits in a systematic manner. From the little children to the old women there was work for all, adapted to their strength and ability. Very picturesque were the gardens, with corn and beans planted at equal distances in alternate rows, so arranged that the stalks of corn were opposite the spaces between the hills of beans. A pleasure in the beauty of the gardens is evident in any mention of them by the Mandan.

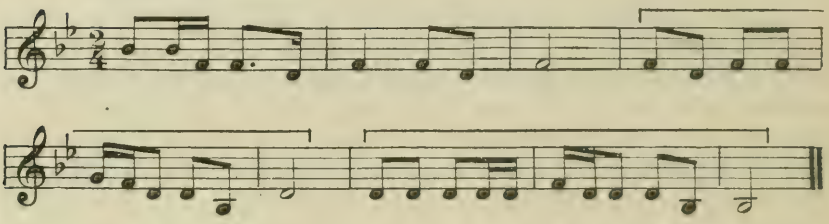
When the corn was almost ripe, it was closely guarded by the women of the tribe. Scaffolds or platforms were erected for this purpose. These were not so strong as the corn-drying scaffolds in the village and were usually placed near a tree, or provided with artificial shade.[64] There the women sat, often busying themselves with some handiwork, and around these guarding platforms there centered much of the inner life of the village. This is evidenced in the character of many of the garden songs which were sung by the watchers and are said to have been sung also by the women when cultivating the young plants. They are social songs, it being expressly stated that the songs were not "intended to make the corn grow." Many phases of village life found expression amid the sweet surroundings of the garden, or in the gentle dawn when the women went early to their work. Many of the garden songs were the possession of certain individuals who, it appears, sometimes put new words to old melodies, as in Nos. 12 to 17. Other songs may have been individual compositions. One woman, bowed with years, said that "the garden songs were always lonesome songs," and we find in some of them a sadness that was undoubtedly repressed in the village. Others are evidently the songs of young girls, and in them we find the word *i'mupa*, which is translated "my best friend," but is more accurately expressed by the word "chum," as it contains the idea of the first excluding affection of a young girl by which she chooses one particular girl of her own age as her constant companion. This word occurs also in a song of the Little River Women Society (No. 39). It was not unusual for two young girls to watch adjacent cornfields from the same guarding platform. Such girls might have sung No. 12.

A suggestion of the difficulties connected with gardening is preserved in the following song, which is said to have been taught to very young girls. The words are freely translated thus: "It is hard work to care for a garden. The blackbirds come and eat it up. Come, my brother, and kill them."

[64] The gardens of the Mandan probably differed little from those of the Hidatsa. Cf. Wilson, Agriculture of the Hidatsa Indians, pp. 22–34. Concerning the varieties of corn, see Will and Hyde, Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri, pp. 284–317.

No. 11. "Kill the Blackbirds" (Catalogue No. 877)

Recorded by OTTER WOMAN

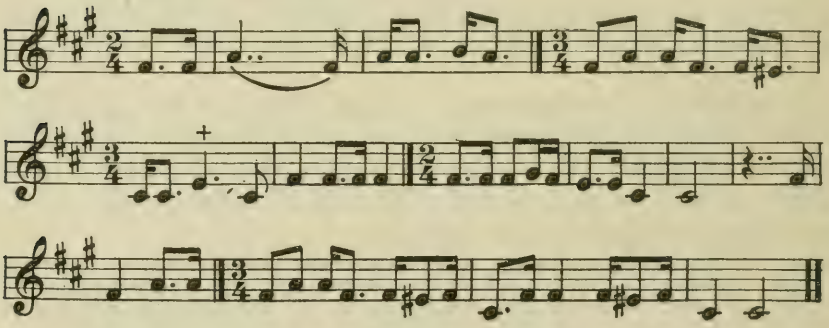
VOICE ♩ = 56
Drum not recorded

Analysis.—In rhythmic structure this song comprises three periods, each ending with a half-note. The rhythm of the first period is slightly different from that of the second and third. The accented tones, with one exception, are those of the major triad, yet 9 of the 15 intervals are minor thirds.

It was customary for a woman to have certain garden songs of her own, as the men had their personal war songs. The two songs next following are the personal songs of Scattered Corn.

No. 12. "The Corn is My Pleasure" (Catalogue No. 813)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN

VOICE ♩ = 60
Drum not recorded



WORDS (MANDAN, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

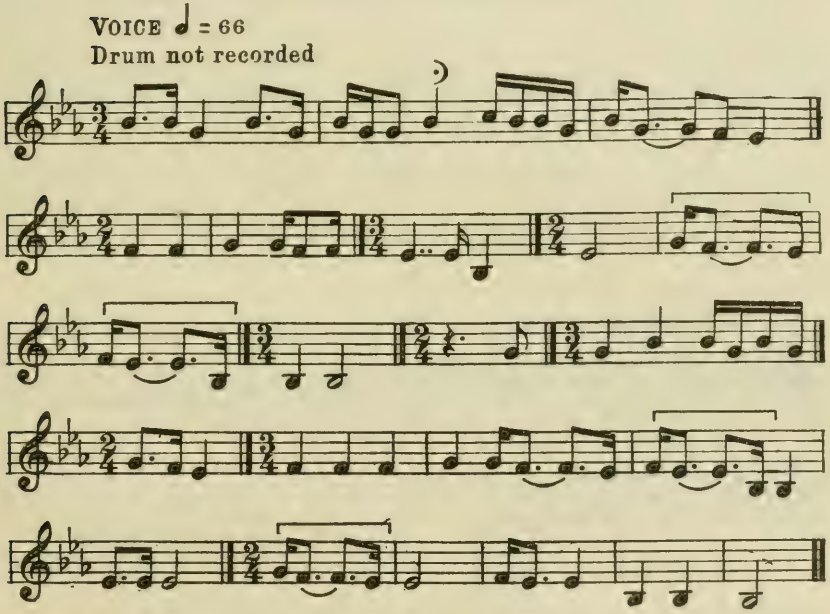
i'mupa	my best friend
wa'tĕwĕöni'tašika'na	what do you like?
e'teka'na	you said
mita'tamiha'otakĕ	the corn (an old term)
a'te	is
ptaha'pana'šotĕ'	my pleasure

Analysis.—The intonation in the four renditions of this song was somewhat wavering, yet a difference between the tone transcribed as

E sharp (third measure) and that transcribed as E natural (fourth measure) is always apparent. The song contains only the tones of the minor triad and seventh. Other songs with this tone material are Nos. 20, 28, 32, 34, 40, 65, and 79, constituting 8 per cent of the entire number of songs. This tone material occurred in three Chippewa songs, one Sioux song, and two songs of the Northern Utes. In material previously analyzed it is a very rare occurrence that a song ends on an unaccented part of the measure. If the final tone occurs on that portion of a measure it is prolonged into the next measure, but in the present series 26 songs (24 per cent) end on an unaccented count and the tone is terminated before the beginning of the next measure. Songs with this peculiarity are Nos. 12, 17, 21, 25, 26, 29, 36, 38, 44, 49, 50, 53, 55, 57, 58, 71, 77, 86, 87, 92, 95, 101, 102, 103, 104, and 105. This song is strongly rhythmic in character but contains no rhythmic unit. The principal interval of progression is the minor third which constitutes 42 per cent of the entire number of intervals.

No. 13. "I am Alone" (Catalogue No. 814)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

numak'dahĕki'---------- that man
wa'niwapa'ka na'śona---------- you refused
numa'kenus---------- that man
o'niku e'oška---------- is it he?
ĭawaś---------- he is lost

mi′ha	I am alone
hampĕ′	the day
waha′	to see,
de′ha	for a long time
wa′hakĕ′nikuk′	I will be alone,
e′oška	him
wahĕ′ki	I cannot see

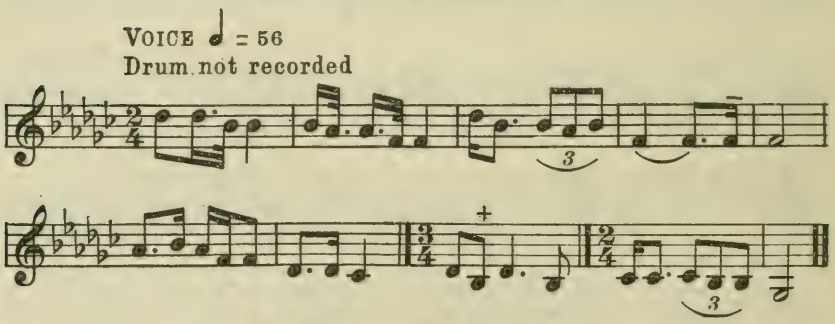
Analysis.—A slight rising in pitch is noted in the four renditions of this song, as in No. 5. The tone material is that of the fourth five-toned scale. The melody progresses chiefly by whole tones, the interval of a major second constituting 53 per cent of the entire number of intervals.

The preceding song, while expressing loneliness, is still the song of a young girl. The two songs next following are those of a widow. In 1912 Otter Woman (pl. 14, *a*) and Little Crow, her husband, recorded No. 63. Little Crow died soon afterwards, and when the writer returned in 1915 Otter Woman recorded these two songs, saying she had put her own words to old melodies and sung them ever since her husband died. She was so overcome with emotion that the songs were transcribed with difficulty. The melodies are those of old-time garden songs. The words of No. 14 are freely translated as follows: "The man who was my lover is dead and gone. I wonder where he is gone. I am lonely every day. If I could go to him as I am I would go, no matter how far away."

No. 14. "My Lover is Dead"

(Catalogue No. 875)

Recorded by OTTER WOMAN



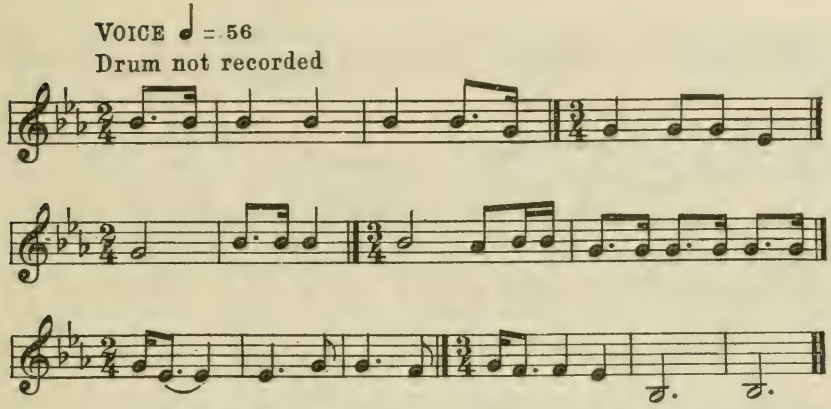
Analysis.—The tempo of this song is particularly slow. The subdominant is prominent, a peculiarity that was noted in songs of sadness among the Chippewa. More than half the progressions are minor thirds, and the song has a compass of 12 tones.

The words of this song are freely translated as follows: "A Dog Society man went north to war and was killed there. I am sad every day because I did not see him coming back. My sweetheart, if I could go to you just as I am, I would go."

No. 15. "My Heart Aches Every Day"

(Catalogue No. 878)

Recorded by OTTER WOMAN

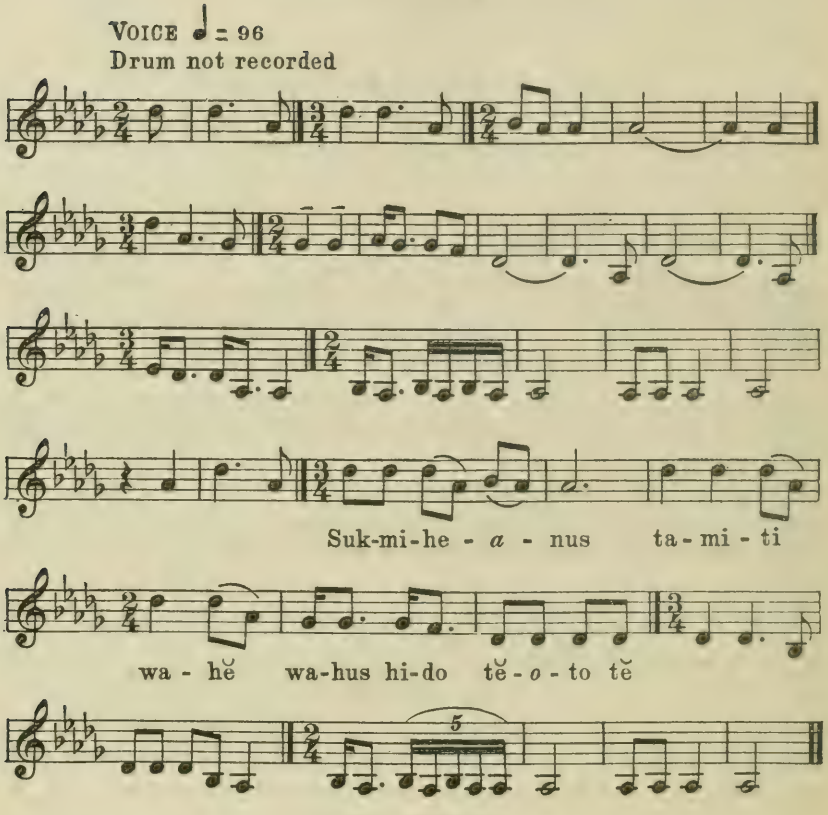


Analysis.—This song contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth and seventh, but the only accented tones are those of the major triad. The range is from the dominant above the tonic to the dominant in the lower octave. The song progresses by intervals containing two, three, or four semitones, the only interval other than these being the descending fourth at the close of the song.

Otter Woman said that she learned the next two songs from Black Tongue, her father. It was said that her father sang No. 16 in the garden, and that "it was sung even before his time." It is interesting to note that the intervals are larger in these two songs than in the preceding garden songs (Nos. 11–15), which were composed and sung by women.

No. 16. "This is Her Village" (Catalogue No. 874)

Recorded by OTTER WOMAN



WORDS (MANDAN)

sukmi'henus	the maiden
tami'ti	her village
wahĕ'	to see
wahus'	I came
hi'do tĕ'totĕ	this it is

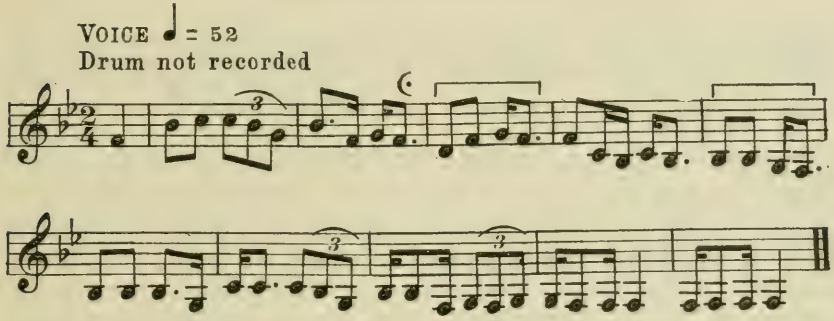
(Free translation: "The maiden I came to see, this is her village.")

Analysis.—Fifty intervals occur in this song, 19 of which are fourths and 22 are major seconds. The song shows a descent of 11 tones in the first 10 measures, this descending trend being repeated in the second portion of the song. The interval of a fourth was clearly given, though the intonation on other intervals was wavering in the three renditions. The song contains all the tones of the octave except the second and seventh.

Black Tongue, said to have been the owner of this and the preceding song, is remembered as one of the principal medicine men among the Mandan. Otter Woman was 74 years old when she recorded her father's songs and said that he died when she was about 30 years old. She said that when the people wanted rain so the corn would grow they brought water and poured it on her father's head, and it always rained. In the following song he "spoke to the corn," and said, "You have all come back."

No. 17. Song to the Corn (Catalogue No. 876)

Recorded by OTTER WOMAN

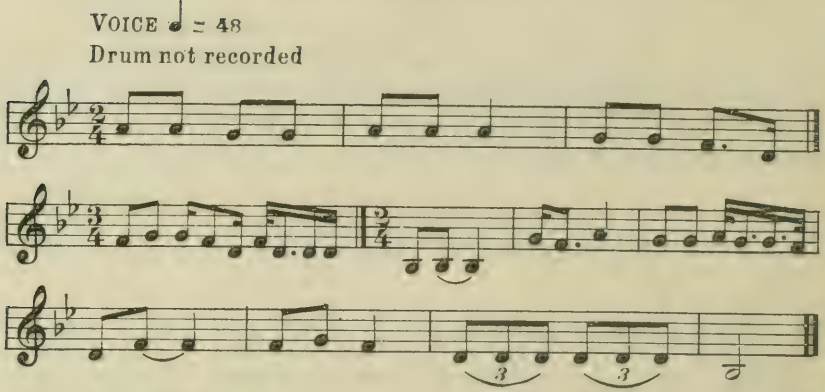


Analysis.—The interval of a major third does not occur in this song, which is major in tonality. The interval of a fourth comprises almost 25 per cent of the intervals and the minor third occurs with about the same frequency. Like the other garden songs, it is not rhythmic, though a short unit of rhythm appears twice. The tone material is the fourth five-toned scale, and the song has a compass of 12 tones.

An echo of another side of the village life appears in the following song, which was recorded by Yellow Hair (pl. 15, *a*), wife of Butterfly (pl. 15, *c*). The songs of Butterfly are Nos. 79, 88, and 106 in this series. The words of this song were not recorded, but were said to mean "The first (or present) wife laughs when the next wife is brought to the lodge."

No. 18. "The First Wife Laughs" (Catalogue No. 906)

Recorded by YELLOW HAIR



Analysis.—This song contains four rhythmic periods, the second containing two measures and the others containing three measures. A taunting effect is given by the count divisions in the middle portion of the song. Other songs expressing derision are Nos. 93 and 107. Other songs containing syncopations are noted in the analysis of No. 1. With the exception of an ascending major sixth, the melody progresses entirely by intervals containing two, three, or four semitones.

EAGLE CATCHING

Early travelers in the Northwest mention the custom of eagle catching, but Matthews states that his is the first complete description of it.[65] This differs from the accounts given the present writer in that, according to him, the birds were allowed their liberty after their tail feathers had been removed. The writer's Mandan and Hidatsa informants agreed that the eagles were killed, and the Hidatsa informants stated that they were buried with some ceremony. The custom appears to have been common to both tribes and widely practiced in that region. The principal information, with the songs herewith presented, is from the Mandan, but certain notes are given from the Hidatsa.

[65] Matthews, Ethnography of the Hidatsa, pp. 58–60. Cf. also Pepper and Wilson. An Hidatsa shrine, pp. 310–314. In this account a black bear instructed a man in the art of eagle catching, and the stuffed skin of a young black bear was the eagle catcher's fetish. The writer's interpreter stated that the animal referred to in the tradition was "something like a bear," but that "as near as he could make out it must have been a wolverine." Because of his uncertainty, he used the term "little animal" in his interpreting, but, with this explanation, the word "wolverine" is used in this material. The catching of eagles by means of pits was practiced by the Blackfeet, Sioux, Cheyenne, and Arapaho, and presumably by all the Plains tribes. The custom among the Blackfeet, with a mention of "eagle songs," is recorded by George Bird Grinnell in Blackfoot Lodge Tales, pp. 236–240.

The Mandan material comprised in this section was supplied by Ben Benson, the last Mandan who has the hereditary right to sing the eagle-catching songs. He has in his possession the eagle catcher's fetish, consisting of the skin of a wolverine, which he inherited from Iron Eyes, his father. He also has two "mushroom rattles" (see pp. 62–63) which were used in certain ceremonies of the eagle camp. Iron Eyes gave four horses in exchange for the skin of the wolverine, though it was his by inheritance, and so great is the respect shown this fetish in the camp that it is seldom, if ever, taken from the lodge of its owner. In accordance with native custom, Ben Benson brought a witness with him for this important conference, selecting Water Chief, a leading member of the tribe, who occasionally made suggestions or was consulted by Benson. The interpreter was Mr. Fred Huber, an Hidatsa, as a Mandan interpreter was not available and Benson spoke the two languages with equal fluency.

Benson's information is as follows: The man in charge of the eagle camp was called Old Wolverine, referring to the legend of the origin of the custom (pp. 64–69), and the office was hereditary, as already indicated. The duties of Old Wolverine included the selection of the place for the camp and the direction of all its arrangements.

The eagle-catching camp was made in the autumn, soon after the corn harvest, and the people remained in it "until the ice was along the edge of the rivers and little pools." The eagle traps were located out of sight of the camp and about a mile and a half distant from it. While in the eagle camp the men did not sleep at home, but in a large lodge, where they lay with their heads on one long log.

An eagle trap consisted of a hollow in the ground covered with a matting. The foundation of this matting was of brush and it is said that grass and weeds were so cleverly interwoven with the brush and were placed above it in such a manner that a casual observer would not notice any difference between the trap and the hillside on which it was placed. The traps were usually located on the slope of a knoll or butte, about one-third the distance below the summit. It is said this location was chosen because the eagles were frequently seen to sweep to the ground just after flying over a knoll. Beside the woven matting, at the side next the summit of the knoll, the bait was fastened to the ground. This was usually a rabbit from which the skin had been removed, but a fox was sometimes used for the purpose. The eagle catcher seated himself in the hollow concealed by the brush matting, and when an eagle alighted on the matting he secured it by reaching upward and grasping its feet. Traps were placed in locations where eagles were often seen, and much care

was bestowed on the selection of suitable places, but this in itself was not considered sufficient to insure success. Benson stated that "it was a very solemn thing to go out to catch eagles, and if a man were not serious he would not succeed." The eagle-catching songs recorded by Benson are Nos. 19 to 30.

The writer visited an eagle trap, which had been in disuse for about 75 years. It was near the house of Running Rabbit, at the edge of the "bad lands," and was considered a particularly well-located trap in the old days. Running Rabbit's father had used it so many times that when the land on the reservation was divided among the Indians he asked that the knoll on which it was located be made part of his allotment. His wish was granted, and the land is now in the possession of his son. The trap is situated on the western slope of a butte, which is one of a long series, all being somewhat similar in contour. From the eagle trap there is a wide view toward the north and northwest (pl. 17, *a*, *b*). The spot selected for the trap was a small bench, or bit of comparatively level land, not much larger than the trap itself. Weeds and brush had filled the hollow, but these were easily cut away and the writer descended into it. The hollow was found to be 3 feet deep and less than 4 feet in width. It was intended that the proportions of the trap should be such that when a man was seated in it his head would be only a little below the brush matting, thus enabling him to reach up and grasp the feet of the eagle. A bone was found sticking upright in the ground close to the trap on the side toward the summit of the knoll. This bone (pl. 16, *a*) had apparently been used for fastening the bait. It was identified as an upright vertebra of the buffalo, is about 14 inches in length, and on it there remains a trace of red paint.[66] The writer also visited the location of the eagle catcher's camp, about a mile distant from this trap.

Benson stated that at the close of the eagle-catching camp there occurred a period of fasting, which continued four days. During this time certain ceremonial rattles were used by Old Wolverine. The rattles are known as "mushroom rattles" because of their shape; two used in the old times, as already indicated, are in the possession of Ben Benson. Old Wolverine held a rattle in each hand and struck them together, either the edges or the flat tops, after which he shook them in the usual manner of using a rattle. The specimen illustrated (pl. 9, *d*) belonged to Moves Slowly and is in the possession of the North Dakota Historical Society, having

[66] A buffalo skull showing traces of red paint was found by the writer on the site of a Sioux sun dance held in 1882. It is interesting to note the persistence of the native vermilion, though exposed to the severity of the weather in that region. (Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 93.)

a. Yellow Hair

c. Butterfly

b. Sitting Rabbit

a

b

c

a. Bone used for fastening bait in eagle catching. b, c. "Kick-ball"

a. Eagle trap (filled by vegetation in foreground)

b. View from eagle trap

a. Sitting Crow

b. Holding Eagle

been photographed for this work through the courtesy of Dr. Melvin R. Gilmore. It is made of rawhide sewn over a small wooden hoop at one end. The rattle is $5\frac{3}{4}$ inches in total length, the handle is $2\frac{1}{4}$ inches long, and the top is $4\frac{1}{8}$ inches in diameter. The handle is decorated with wild sage and the entire rattle is painted with native vermilion.

So much time was required for recording the eagle-catching songs, with the information concerning them, that it was impossible to secure further details concerning the camp. Accordingly, the foregoing narrative was translated to Buffalo Paunch and Dancing Bull, members of the Hidatsa tribe, and an inquiry was made from them on the subject. They stated that the custom of their tribe was substantially the same that Benson had related concerning the Mandan and added the following information as supplementary to his. They said that eagle catching among the Hidatsa was called *a'maśi mĭre'ri*, meaning "cache going into," and referring to the position of the eagle catcher when at his work.[67] Although many men camped together, each had his own eagle trap, which he never entered unless the wind was in the west. The remainder of the time was spent in the camp or in securing food. Those who were most "serious in mind" were accustomed to make a great effort to secure success. There was a sweat lodge in the camp, and some men tortured themselves in the sweat lodge, crying aloud as they prayed to the spirits for success in securing eagles. It was not unusual for a man to ask that cuts be inflicted in his breast or back similar to those sometimes inflicted during the sun dance. These were not made by Old Wolverine, but by the man's "clan fathers," or "clan brothers." A man who, after prolonged effort, was unable to secure any eagles sometimes tortured himself severely in his effort to secure assistance from the spirits. A frequent custom, in such instances, was to bend down a sapling so that when a man was suspended from it by the flesh of his breast or back his toes would touch the ground. Usually a man enduring this torture was released at midnight by Old Wolverine, but if the man had expressed a desire to remain in that position during the entire night Old Wolverine did not go to his relief until daybreak. This was a severe ordeal, as the nights at that season of the year were frosty and the man suffered from cold as well as from the pain of suspension. It was said that, in the old days, this torture was repeated from 10 to 30 times if it did not sooner bring success in catching eagles.

[67] Matthews states that the covered hole or trap is called "amasi'." Op. cit., p. 58.

Those who were less serious in temperament spent much time in the diversions of the camp. One of the principal diversions was the telling of stories. In ordinary times a man who desired to hear some of the old stories might send for a story-teller, cook a feast, give him a few gifts, and ask him to tell his stories, but at an eagle camp the story-telling was more expensive, and a man might even give his wife to the story-teller in return for his services.

When a man seated in an eagle trap secured an eagle, he strangled it with twine made of tough wood fiber (see p. 60). He then pulled out the tail feathers and took the body of the eagle to Old Wolverine, who cut off the wings and returned them to him. Old Wolverine then asked some one to dig a grave for the eagle and "there was a little ceremony when the eagle was buried." Before going to the eagle camp the people provided pieces of cloth about a yard in length. No special color was preferred, but the cloth must be new. When an eagle was buried it was customary to "offer" these pieces of cloth to him, with native tobacco,[68] these articles being placed in the grave. When this was finished, the successful eagle catcher gave a feast to his friends, and also offered food to the spirit of the eagle. In the latter action they tied the feathers and wings of the eagle to a pole in front of the lodge, so located that the sun would strike it, and the food was eaten within the lodge.

ORIGIN OF THE CUSTOM OF EAGLE CATCHING

The following narrative was given by Ben Benson, with Water Chief present for consultation. The authority of Ben Benson on this matter has been established in the preceding section. Benson said: "Down near Painted Woods Creek there was once a Mandan village called the Brown Earth village. The man considered leader of that village was named Sun. He and his wife had several daughters, but only one son, of whom they were very proud. The boy's name was Black Wolf. They loved the boy so much that they would not let him work and indulged him in everything. But when the crier went through the camp, calling for young men to go out and look for game, this boy's name was never called. One night the crier came near the place where this boy was courting a girl, and the boy said, 'Call my name.' He did this in order to impress the girl, but the crier called his name with those of five others. They were required to start at daybreak the next morning, and the crier sent them toward the north. It was autumn, and about the month of October, when they started.

[68] A specimen of this plant was collected and identified as *Cubelium concolor* (Forst) Raf. by Mr. Paul C. Standley, assistant curator, Division of Plants, United States National Museum, Washington, D. C.

"Black Wolf supposed that his companions were friendly to him, but this was not true. They were all jealous of him because they were afraid he had been courting their wives, so they decided to lose him. They knew that they could do this easily because he had not been in the habit of going far from the camp. So as soon as they started out one after another ran away from him, dashing ahead as fast as possible. They did this to tease him and wear him out. As he did not know the country he was always left behind. At daylight they said that they would stop for a little while and rest. Black Wolf, never having been on such an expedition nor treated so roughly, was tired out and soon fell asleep. The others lay down also, but wakened very soon and ran away, while Black Wolf slept long and soundly. When at last he awoke he found himself alone in a strange place. Rising quickly, he began to walk back and forth and to call the names of his companions. He did this for a long time, and then he realized that he was lost. He carried a large bow lance, but had no weapon, not even a knife. He was well clothed, but had no means of getting food. Then he took from his bow the decorations of eagle feathers and otter fur and 'prayed to the buffalo skull,'[69] giving to this object of his supplication all the decorations from his bow and all his clothing until at last he had nothing left except the bare bow. Several days passed and the weather grew cold. He could get no food and was sitting in a patch of buckbrush thinking that his end was near when he looked up and saw an eagle. It was the time when the eagles flew south, and looking at it the boy remembered his father. He saw the eagle fly over a knoll and down the sheltered side of the knoll; there he saw it flutter and disappear. He went to the place and there he found a hole covered with brush, and in the hole there was a little animal called *i'sina goni'ga*. This animal was a little like a bear (supposed to be a wolverine). It had caught the eagle and seemed to have drawn it down into the hole by the feet. When the animal saw Black Wolf it said, 'You have arrived, my brother,' and Black Wolf replied 'Yes, where is your lodge?' The little wolverine said, 'There is my trail, you can see it. My father told me to catch only one eagle to-day.' Black Wolf asked 'How did you catch the eagle?' The little wolverine replied, 'I spit on my left hand and held it up through the brush, and when the eagle came I caught it with my right hand.'

"Black Wolf and the little wolverine followed the trail and came to a lodge made of bark and grass,[70] into which they entered. The

[69] The presence of a buffalo skull in an Hidatsa shrine and of offerings to "the spirit of the buffalo skull" are mentioned by Pepper and Wilson, An Hidatsa shrine, pp. 297–298, also p. 314.

[70] A lodge similar to this is used by men in the camp, all the customs of the eagle catchers being derived from this legend.

inside of the lodge was lined with the tail feathers of the eagle. There were many people there and they ate nothing but eagles, but the little wolverine had to get all the food. When they entered the lodge, the little wolverine said, 'I have brought my little brother,' and his father said, 'Good, bring him in.' So Black Wolf was taken into the lodge and warmed and fed. Some of the family had that day obtained fresh buffalo meat, and they gave him some of it with water. They were very kind to him in every way.

"After a time Black Wolf said to the little wolverine: 'Let us go together to catch an eagle.' They consulted the people in the lodge, who gave their permission; then they started together for the eagle trap. They had been there only a short time when an eagle came and was caught. Black Wolf said 'Fine! Let me catch the next one all alone.' Soon there came a black eagle and Black Wolf said, 'Let us get him,' but the little wolverine said, 'No; my father says that black eagles are very quick and must be let alone.' But Black Wolf finally persuaded the little wolverine to help him try to catch the black eagle. As they were trying to hold the eagle it bit the hand of the little wolverine and it was hard work to get the talons out of the flesh. The little animal cried with pain and started home. Black Wolf was sad to think he had brought trouble to those who had been kind to him, so he began to cry in sympathy and the two went home in tears. When they reached the lodge, the old people asked Black Wolf what had happened and he replied, 'I asked him to help me catch a black eagle.' The little wolverine cried still harder. Then the old people said, 'We told him not to catch a black eagle. Now you have gotten your little brother into trouble.' They felt very badly and showed it so plainly that Black Wolf was greatly embarrassed. He went out to search for roots which might be medicinal, and he found a root called the 'black medicine.' Taking it into the lodge he said, 'Little brother, come here and I will doctor your hand.' The little wolverine went to him and Black Wolf chewed the root and spit upon his hand and the pain stopped at once. The old people wanted him to get more of the root so that the man could include it among his medicinal herbs, so Black Wolf found some more of the herb and the man put it with his medicines.

"Black Wolf continued to live in the lodge, but after a time he grew lonely. One day he and the little wolverine were sitting on a hill, when the little wolverine asked 'What is the matter?' Black Wolf replied 'I am lonesome.' His companion said, 'I will go and tell my father.' So he ran to the lodge and soon came back saying, 'Father says you may go back to your own people, and you had

better go right away. When you go back to the lodge and they ask when you are going you had better say "Now," for if you say "Tomorrow" they will make you stay a year, and if you say "In two days" they will make you wait two years, and so on.'

"So they started back to the lodge, and when they reached there the old man said 'I understand that you want to go home. Your home is not far away. When do you want to start?' Black Wolf replied 'Now.' The old man said 'All right,' and told the little wolverine to select some nice eagle tails for Black Wolf to take home with him, as his people valued them. The little animal spread the eagle tails on the ground and made a big heavy bundle of them for Black Wolf.

"The old man said, 'There is a certain chief in your village who has two daughters. They will offer you these two girls for your wives.[d] I want them for my daughters-in-law and you must be sure to get them. I will help you prepare the medicine necessary to secure them.'

"When Black Wolf was ready to start the next morning, the old man took white sage and tied it in four bundles, which he gave to Black Wolf, saying that two were to be used as 'stepping bundles' and the other two were to be carried in his arms. He told Black Wolf to lay one bundle on the ground and step on it, then lay down the other, step on it, and pick up the one which lay behind him, saying that when he had performed this action four times he would be at the top of the village. He said, 'And when you come back you are to give the other two bundles to my daughter-in-law and she must come back in the same way.'

"The last night that Black Wolf slept with the little wolverine they talked of Black Wolf's journey and the little wolverine told him what to do. He said, 'When you come back be sure to bring with you a corn ball[71] and a pipe. I will get the corn ball and we will always be together.' He also said, 'When you see my father, on your return, you must cry and say, "I want *mądawanuṡgi mawahĕts.*"'[72]

"Black Wolf started the next morning and did as he had been instructed. After stepping four times from one bundle to another he found himself in his own village. As soon as he entered the village everyone remarked on the fact that he was not starved, that he had good clothing, and had brought home many eagle feathers.

---

[d] Black Wolf was supposed to get two wives, but the narrative later mentions only one.

[71] These corn balls were much liked by children of the tribe. The shelled corn was dried in the sun, parched over a fire, and then pounded in a mortar, after which it was mixed with grease and made into rolls about 3 inches long and 1½ inches in diameter.

[72] Freely translated, this means "I want to place the hide of a small animal on a frame for drying."

This came to the ears of the chief whose name had been mentioned by the father of the little wolverine and he sent for Black Wolf. When Black Wolf entered his lodge they talked together and the chief gave him his two daughters for wives and also gave him a white buffalo robe. Black Wolf said 'Aha! I will have a fine robe for my father' (meaning the father of the little wolverine). He then promised the robe to the father of the little wolverine, who heard him and called back 'thank you.' The chief commended him for this.

"Black Wolf then went to see his natural father, who asked why the chief had sent for him. Black Wolf told him all the particulars and said that he had promised the white buffalo robe to his adoptive father. Then his natural father said, 'Good, we all have plenty of robes; you had better go right up north and give it to him.'

"So Black Wolf started back to the home of his adoptive father, having secured the corn ball and the pipe, and he explained to his wife about the sage bundles and the way to step from one to another. When he neared the wolverine camp he began to cry '*Madawanuŝgi mawahĕts*,' as the little wolverine had told him to do. He went to the lodge of his adoptive father. For quite a long time his father took no notice of him, but at last he said, 'Well, my son, it may be so. Come in.' So Black Wolf went into the lodge. When he had entered, he took out the corn ball and pipe and gave them to his father. After taking them his father told him to go and sit down with his wife, pointing to the place where they were to sit. Black Wolf did as he was told. The place was full of black and brown wolverines who had been invited because he was coming. The old man told the little wolverine to bring food for Black Wolf and his wife. When they had finished eating this food, the crowd was divided into two parts, the black wolverines going to one side of the lodge and the brown to the other. When this had been done and all were again seated, the old man said, 'Comrades, I want you to study about this. Our friend has again used the word *madawanuŝgi mawahĕts*. See what you can do for him.' He handed his unlighted pipe to the man next him, who sat a while in silence, studying the problem, then gave it up and passed the pipe to the man next him. So the pipe was passed from one to another until it came to the little wolverine. He let it pass him and it went around the circle and came back to him again. He let it pass unlighted a second time. It returned to his father, who started it around the circle for the third time.

When it reached the little wolverine the third time, he paid no attention to the pipe but snatched the corn ball. His father said, 'Here, what are you doing? Light the pipe.' The little wolverine thrust the pipe in the fire and puffed it. Then he said, 'I did not mean to give you any corn ball but I will.' So he broke the corn ball in two and gave them part of it.

"Afterwards all the wolverines went to sleep. The next morning the old man said to Black Wolf, 'Go out with your brother, tickle him until he dies, then remove his skin carefully, fill it with grass in a nice shape, and bring it to me.'

"Black Wolf did this and brought the skin to the old man. They set it in the back of the lodge and it looked exactly like a little wolverine, eyes and all. Then the old man said, 'This shall be your fetish. Keep it always with you.' He then told Black Wolf to return to his natural father and say, 'In four days we will be with you to make medicine.' He said to Black Wolf, 'When you get home you must prepare corn balls and all kinds of food and there must be plenty of robes. Tell all your friends to help you. We will be there on the night of the fourth day.'

"After telling the boy to go the old man said to his people, 'We had better give the boy some food to take with him as they may be all starving in his village.' The people consented, and it was decided to have a good buffalo hunt near the village and to give all the meat to the boy. They said, 'We will begin it at once.' Just as this was settled an old buffalo came to the old man and said: 'Comrade, this is what I always do—give my body to the Indians. I would like to be in this.' The old man said: 'If that is the case you shall be treated the same as I myself. My son has brought this girl to be my daughter-in-law, you shall be the same as I.'

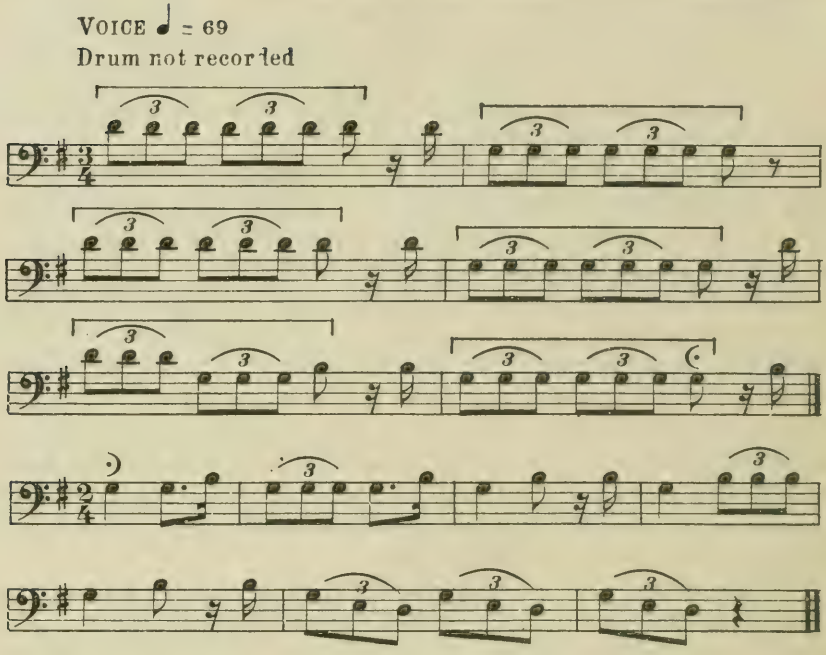
"The old buffalo said: 'Sing my song and whatever you desire will come to you. If you desire the wind, it will come to you, or the buffalo will come, or the eagles will come when you sing this song.'

"The old man said: 'Friend, that is a good song. You have treated me well and I will do as you say.'"

All the songs of eagle catching were recorded by Benson. He said that he could sing the words of the songs in either Mandan or Hidatsa, but as no Mandan interpreter was available he sang them in Hidatsa. It is probable that the words of other songs would have been recorded if a Mandan had been interpreting.

This is the buffalo's song.

No. 19. Song of the Buffalo (Catalogue No. 821)



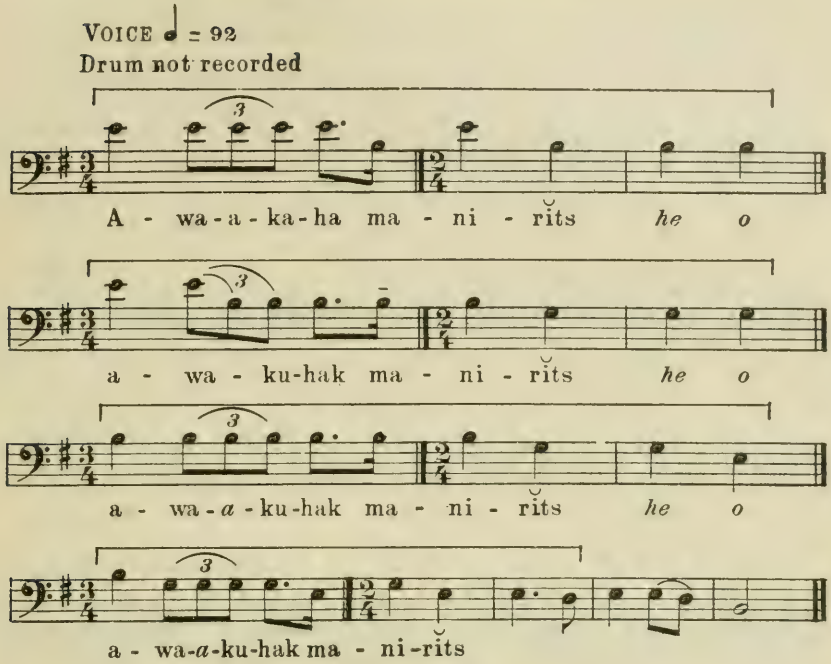
WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

ati'----------	lodge
wu ši ets----------	we arrived
ati'----------	lodge
u ši ets----------	they arrived

Analysis.—The tone used in singing this song was not a clear, musical tone; the transcription, therefore, is not so accurate as in a majority of these songs. The outlining tones (D–B–G–D) were approximately correct in all the renditions and the rhythmic unit was steadily maintained. The interest of the song lies in its harmonic structure, descending trend, and peculiar rhythmic unit. The descending progressions, as in several other songs of the eagle catching, were sung glissando.

Then came a black eagle who said, "Why, you have a son here and I did not know anything about it. You like my children best of all; you can not do without me; you must let me be in this. I will teach you my song." So the black eagle taught him his song.

No. 20. Song of the Black Eagle (Catalogue No. 822)



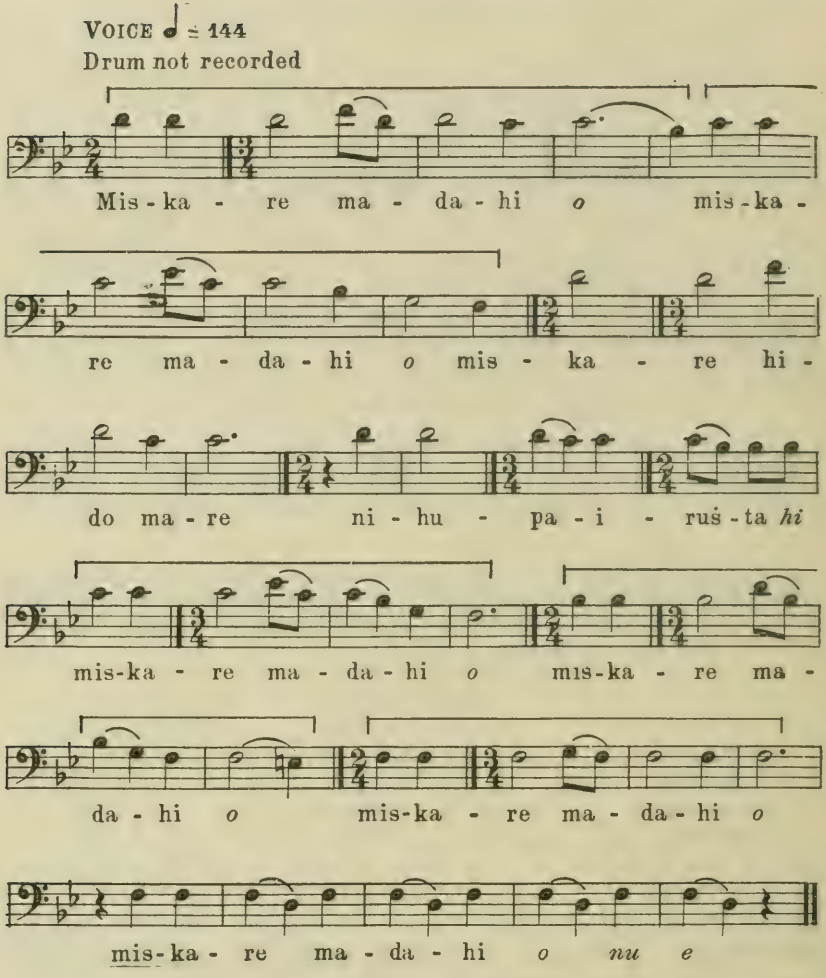
WORDS (HIDATSA)

awaä'kaha	above the earth
mani'rĭts	I walk
awa'kuhak	on the earth
mani'rĭts	I walk

Analysis.—In this, as in the song next preceding, the intonation was wavering, but the harmonic form and the rhythmic unit are interesting. The song is minor in tonality and contains only the tones of the minor triad and seventh. Four renditions were recorded. The second, third, and fourth renditions are uniform in every respect and from them the transcription was made, the first rendition differing in some unimportant respects.

Next came the coyote, who said: "You are forgetting me. I am the one who runs around and sees everything. You can not do without me and I want you to include my song." So the coyote taught him this song.

No. 21. Song of the Coyote (a) (Catalogue No. 823)


VOICE ♩ = 144
Drum not recorded
Mis - ka - re ma - da - hi o mis - ka -
re ma - da - hi o mis - ka - re hi -
do ma - re ni - hu - pa - i - ruś - ta hi
mis-ka - re ma - da - hi o mis-ka - re ma -
da - hi o mis-ka - re ma - da - hi o
mis-ka - re ma - da - hi o nu e

WORDS (HIDATSA)

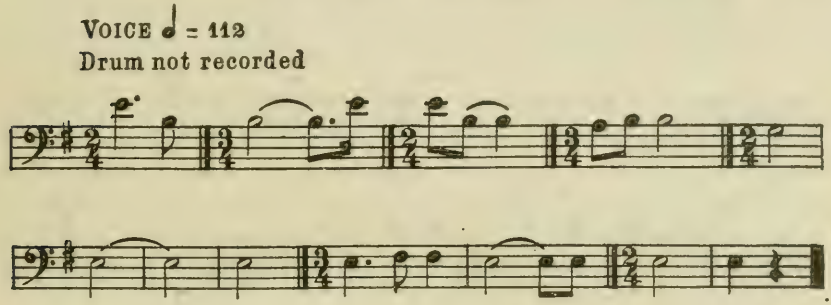
mis'kare[73]_____old woman
mada'hi_____in the fall of the year
hi'do_____here
mare'_____I go
ni'hupaï'ruśta_____your medicine is strongest

[73] This is a term sometimes used by a man in addressing his wife and is translated "old woman." Its use in connection with the coyote is said to have had its origin in a mythical contest between Old Man Coyote and Cedar Post. Mr. Fred Huber related the following version of this legend: "In the center of the old Mandan village there was a cedar post surrounded by a paling of slabs about six feet high. The post represented First Man, who made everything and who had a kindly disposition. Beside him, there was another, known as Coyote Chief, who was always making mischief. In early times

Analysis.—The rhythmic unit is strongly in evidence in this song and was steadily maintained in the three renditions. The tone material is more interesting than in the songs next preceding, as it comprises all the tones of the octave except the seventh, and contains one accidental—the fourth raised a semitone. Thirty-nine progressions occur in the song, about two-thirds being downward. There is a strong feeling for the tonic chord (B flat–D–F) throughout the melody, yet C frequently appears as an accented tone. The song is therefore classified in structure as melodic with harmonic framework.

Then came the snake, who said, "I want to be in this, I am fond of downy eagle plumes. When you get one you may offer it to me in my hole if you like."[74] I will give you my song." So the snake taught him this song.

No. 22. Song of the Snake (Catalogue No. 824)



Analysis.—Five renditions of this song were recorded, the second differing slightly from the others. The song is built upon the tonic triad, descending from the octave to the tonic, with only one accented tone which is not part of that chord. The rhythm is interesting, but contains no unit. Two-thirds of the intervals are descending progressions, the interval of the fourth being especially prominent.

they had a dispute as to which should call the other Younger Brother, so they said: 'Let us leave our bodies here, near together, and wander around for four years; then we will return and see which looks the freshest. This will decide.' So they left their bodies (the cedar post and the coyote body) and went away. The coyote came back first. He found the coyote body all dry—nothing remained but skin and bones, but he breathed on it, rubbed it, and after a while it was a good, living coyote. He looked at the cedar post and it was badly decayed. Soon the other came back and in a short time the cedar post was all right. They looked at each other and saw they were alike, so they said: 'Neither of us shall call the other Younger Brother.' So they addressed each other by a term which a man uses when addressing his wife, the nearest English equivalent being 'old woman.'" Cf. p. 7.

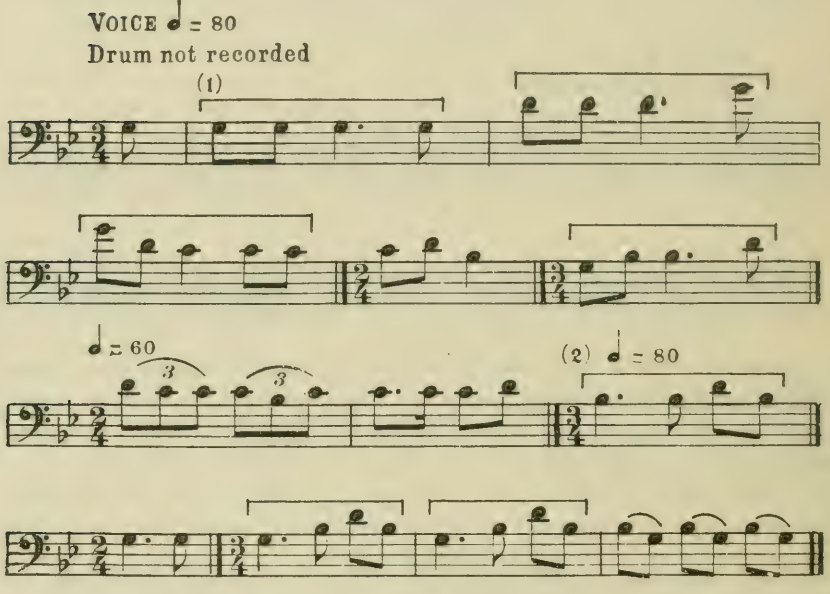
[74] In explanation of this it was said that "the eagle catching is late in the fall and the snakes go into their holes before this takes place, so the snake can not be present at the eagle catching."

Then the old man said, "You four may come. We will go a little way, and stop and sing the buffalo's song; then we will go a little farther, and stop and sing the black eagle's song; then go a little farther, and stop and sing the coyote's song; when we reach the entrance of the village we will sing the snake's song; and when we enter the lodge I will sing my own four songs."

The old man told Black Wolf how to catch the eagles and said, "Now I will teach you my four songs. The first is to be sung when you make the brush shelter under which you are to catch the eagles, the second is to be sung when you make the sweat lodge in the eagle-catching camp, the third is the song of the hollow in which you are to sit while watching for the eagles, and the fourth is the song for the bait." So he taught Black Wolf the four following songs.

No. 23. Song When Making the Brush Shelter

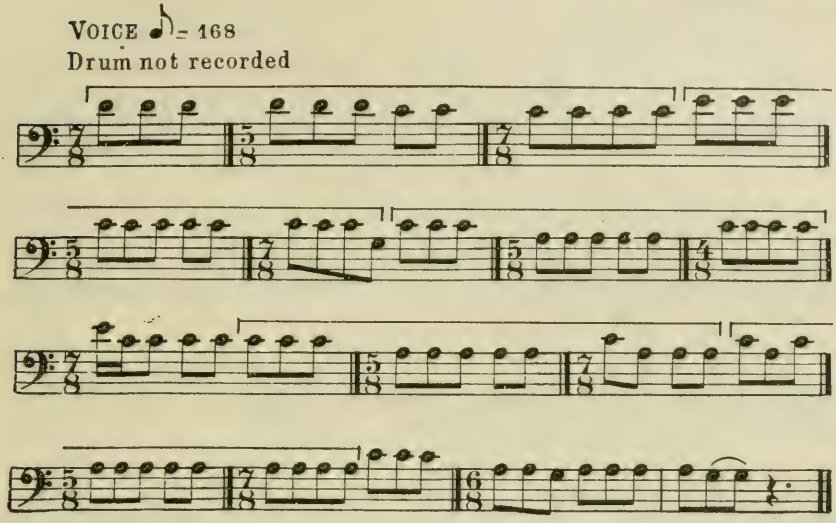
(Catalogue No. 825)



Analysis.—Two rhythmic units occur in this song, the entire rhythmic form of which is well developed. It will be noted that in the first rhythmic unit the group of two eighth notes precedes the dotted quarter and eighth, while in the second unit the group follows the dotted quarter and eighth. The change of time occurred in both renditions. (See No. 8.) Twenty-nine progressions occur in the song, 15 of which are descending and 14 ascending intervals. The close of this, as of several other songs, was marked by a glissando.

No. 24. Song When Making the Sweat Lodge

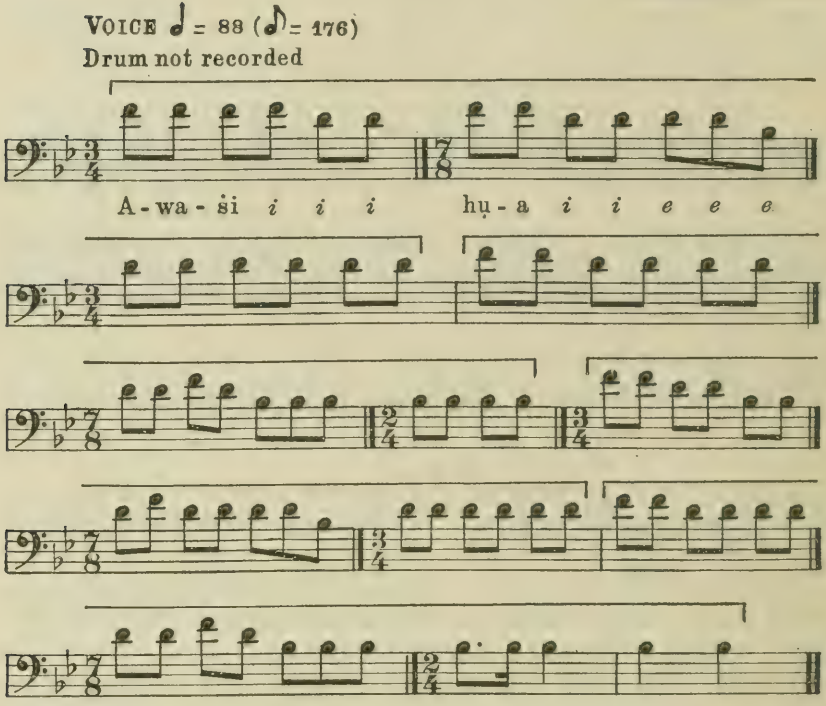
(Catalogue No. 826)



Analysis.—The rhythm of this song is peculiar but was accurately given in both renditions. In melodic material the song comprises only five tones and is analyzed as having C as the keynote, this placing the song on the fourth five-toned scale. The structure of the song is melodic with harmonic framework. Twenty-two progressions occur, 15 of which are descending intervals.

No. 25. Song When Making the Eagle Trap

(Catalogue No. 827)



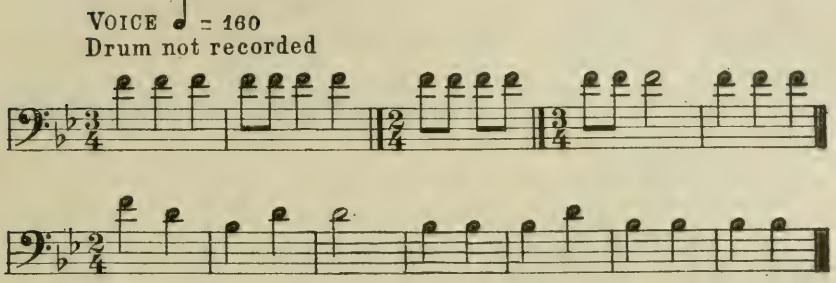
WORDS (HIDATSA)

awa'ṡi---------- the fog
hu'a---------- I summon

Analysis.—Two renditions of this song were recorded and show no points of difference. This is interesting in view of the fact that the song comprises a rhythmic unit four times repeated, and that this unit contains a measure in three-four time followed by a measure in seven-eight time, this in turn being succeeded by one in triple time. The final measure of the unit is slightly changed in its second and fourth occurrences. The intonation was wavering, yet the intervals of a major triad were unmistakable. From the last three tones there was a downward glissando which cannot be indicated in notation and which did not end on a definite tone. This suggested a trailing of the voice. Only one interval other than a third occurs in the song, this being an ascending fifth midway through the song. Twenty-three progressions occur in the melody, 14 of which are minor thirds, yet the tonality of the song is major, the only tones occurring in it being B flat–D–F.

No. 26. Song When Preparing the Bait

(Catalogue No. 828)

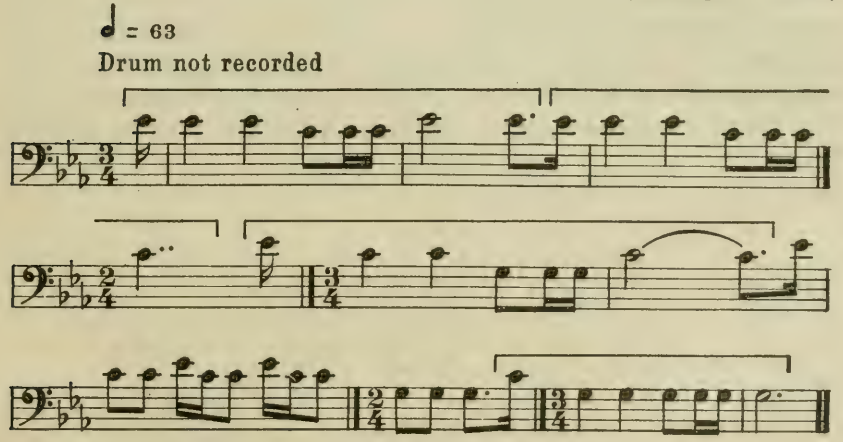


Analysis.—This song is transcribed from the first rendition, the following renditions being interspersed with frequent cries and glissando calls. The melody contains no tones except those of the tonic triad and has only six progressions.

After teaching Black Wolf these songs the old man said: "I have given you my son. Treat him kindly and do not make him angry. If you make him angry he may leave you, but if you are kind to him he may stay with you a long time. If you were bad to him, his spirit would still be faithful and come back to you, but it is much better that he remain with you himself. I will now teach you four more songs—the song of my son, the little wolverine, a goose song, a swan song, and a song of the twine we use in the eagle catching." The latter was probably twine used in strangling the eagle.

No. 27. Song of the Little Wolverine

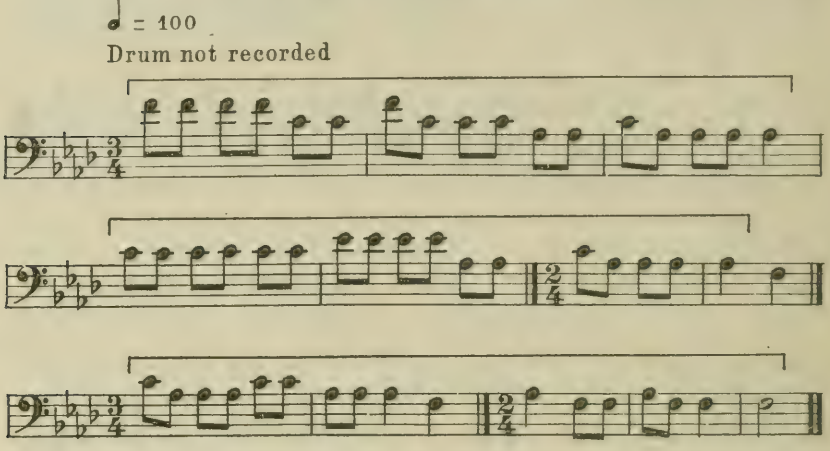
(Catalogue No. 829)



Analysis.—This melody comprises five periods, the first three and the last of which contain exact repetitions of a rhythmic unit, while

the fourth period contains a suggestion of the rhythmic unit in the count divisions. The two renditions of the song do not differ in any respect. The song is harmonic in structure, containing only the tones of the minor triad. The compass is small, comprising only six tones.

No. 28. Song of the Goose (Catalogue No. 830)

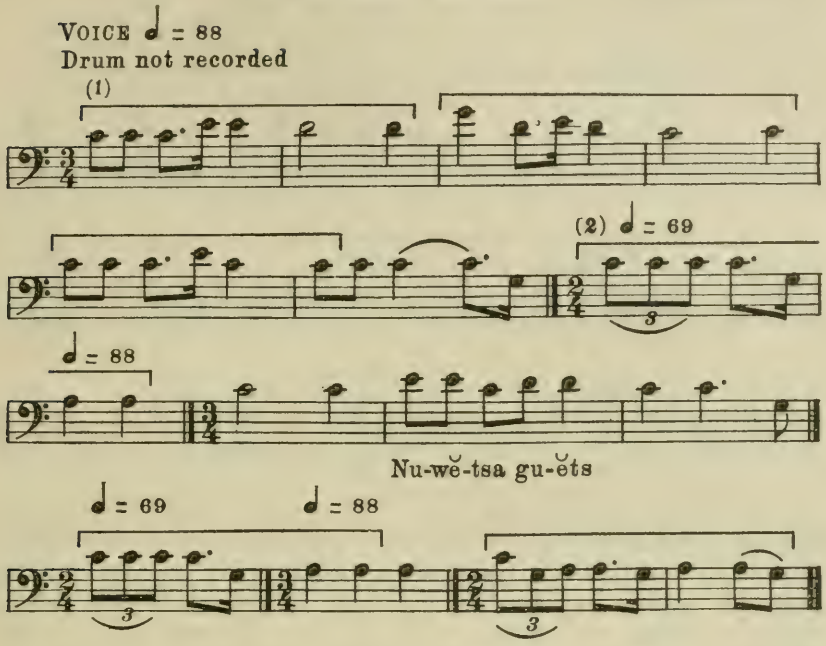


WORDS (HIDATSA)

nu'wilia_____ abreast
mi'ra_____ the geese dance

Analysis.—This song is peculiar in that 14 of the 19 intervals are thirds, 6 of which are in ascending and 6 in descending progression. The major and minor thirds are equal in number. The other intervals consist of 3 fourths and 2 fifths. The song is strongly harmonic in feeling and contains only the tones of the minor triad and seventh. The first three measures comprise a rhythmic unit which is twice repeated, the only variation being in the final measures. Two renditions were recorded, and they are uniform in every respect.

No. 29. Song of the Swan (Catalogue No. 831)

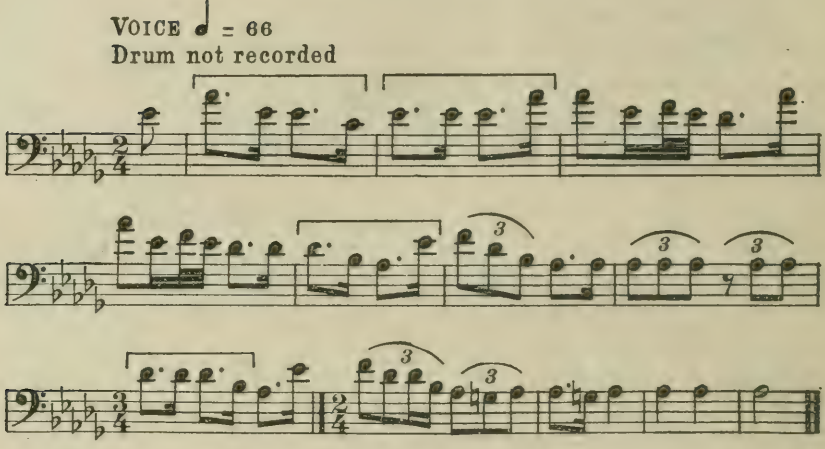


WORDS (HIDATSA)

nu'wĕtsa_____one
gu'ĕts_____that is

Analysis.—The changes of time in this song, though slight, were identical in its three renditions. Two rhythmic units occur, each appearing three times. The singer had difficulty in repeating a tone several times without lowering the pitch, a peculiarity often noted among Indian singers. The tones in this melody are those of the fourth five-toned scale and the song is melodic in structure. Twenty-eight progressions occur, 14 being ascending and 14 descending intervals.

No. 30. Song Concerning the Twine (Catalogue No. 832)



Analysis.—The rhythmic unit of this song is short and not distinctive. All the tones of the octave occur in the song, which is melodic in structure and major in tonality. At the close of the song the voice trailed downward in a glissando which is impossible of transcription.

LEGENDS

ORIGIN OF THE FLAGEOLET

RELATED BY BEN BENSON

At a place called the "Round Missouri" Granny had her home. A creek called "True Earth Creek" flowed into the Short Missouri, and around the Short Missouri was a flat on which Granny's garden patch was located.[75] Old Granny often went to look at her field. Once, just before reaching the mouth of the creek, she saw the print of a little child's foot in the soft ground, and when she reached the

[75] The Old Woman Who Never Dies was sometimes called Grandmother, and her connection with the corn has already been noted (p. 41). Will and Hyde, summarizing an account by Maximilian, state that "Her residence was for a long time on the west side of the Missouri, some 10 miles below the Little Missouri River, on the banks of a little slough known as the Short Missouri. A single large house-ring here is pointed out as the site of her home, and the high bottom there is said to have been the Grandmother's field. According to the traditions, she became impatient at the too frequent visits of the Hidatsas and moved into the west." (Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri, p. 223.) The location is evidently the same as that given in connection with this legend, identifying "Granny" as the Old Woman Who Never Dies.

A somewhat different version of this tale is recorded by Kroeber, with the title "Moon-child." The boy is the child of the Moon and an earth woman. His mother escapes to the earth and is killed, but he lingers near her body and steals his food from the garden of an old woman. He is discovered by the old woman, who addresses him as "My grandchild Moon-child." This version contains no mention of a flageolet. Kroeber, Gros Ventre Myths and Tales, pp. 90–94.

field she found her squashes crushed and corn broken down. "That is strange," said Granny. The next time she came to her field she saw the same things. She thought this was very strange and resolved to find out who did it. So she went home and made a "kick-ball" (pl. 16, *b*, *c*), such as is used in a certain woman's game,[76] and also a bow and arrows. All these she took to her garden and left them there. The next time she went to her garden the bow and arrows were gone and the ball and squashes were shot full of arrows. Evidently it was a boy and not a girl who was spoiling her garden. Granny decided to watch for the boy and soon she saw him coming, shooting his little arrows into the squashes.

"Why do you do that?" asked Granny.

"My mother is dead," said the child. "She is near here."

"Let us go and see," said Granny.

The child was so small that he could not tell how it all happened, but Granny saw the dead mother and realized that there was nothing for her to do but to take the child to her house and make a home for him. This she did, and as the child grew older he was sometimes allowed to go hunting alone. Granny said, "Be careful, something may happen to you."

Now the boy observed something which he could not at all understand. He noticed that Granny always put a kettle of "stir-about"[77] in her bed, and that the kettle was empty when she took it out. He investigated and found a big snake. "So this is what eats Granny's stir-about," said the little boy. He thought about it a great deal, saying to himself, "That big snake has been eating Granny's stir-about." At last he took his bow and arrows and shot the snake. When Granny came home he told her what he had done. The snake was her husband; but she did not like to tell this to the little boy, so she said, "Good, I will go and bury him." So she took the big snake outdoors and talked to him, saying, "Husband, the boy is foolish. Sometimes I am almost afraid of him myself. He killed you, but I will put you in a good place." She took him to the Missouri River, but he didn't like that, so she took him back to the round lake. He liked that place and said if she would put him there the lake would never be dry. She put him there, and to this day the lake has never been dry.

---

[76] "The women are expert at playing with a large leathern ball, which they let fall alternately on their foot and knee, again throwing it up and catching it, and thus keeping it in motion for a length of time without letting it fall to the ground. Prizes are given, and they often play high. The ball is often very neat and curiously covered with dyed porcupine quills." Maximilian, op. cit., p. 209. The specimen illustrated was made for the writer, and is of buffalo hide, filled with buffalo hair.

[77] A kind of pudding or mush made of ground corn and water, which is a favorite article of food among these Indians.

Granny again warned the boy that he must be very careful when he was traveling about the country alone. One day the boy started out by himself and came to a place where two men were butchering a buffalo cow with an unborn calf. One of the men was a rough fellow and he followed the boy, carrying the calf and calling out: "Take this to Granny and tell her to cook it for you." The little boy was afraid of the man, and in trying to escape he backed against a leaning tree, then he backed up the tree and along its branches to the farthest end. The men put the calf in the crotch of the tree and they went on butchering the buffalo cow. After this they went away, leaving the boy in the tree. He stayed there a long time. At last the two men came back, and the more sensible of the two said to his companion, "I told you not to scare that little boy. He is still in the tree." He went near and called to him, saying, "Why do you stay in the tree?" The little boy replied, "I'm afraid of the calf."

The man said, "If you will take a message to Granny, we will take down the calf and go home." The little boy consented to do this, and the man said, "Tell Granny that we want her for our daughter-in-law."

When the little boy came home, Granny pretended to be much pleased, though she had been hoping that he would never come back. She said, "I thought surely you were lost." The little boy told his strange experience and said, "The only way I could get back was by promising to tell you that these men want you for their daughter-in-law." Of course this meant that they wanted the gifts, such as robes and meat, which would accompany a daughter-in-law. Granny said, "You did exactly right. Go back to the men and tell them we have decided to do as they say. We will feed and clothe them well, but in return we ask for one of their bows and arrows."

The boy went back to the men and gave Granny's message, saying that they were good hunters and he also hunted a good deal, so he would like one of their bows. They gave him one, but as soon as Granny saw it, she said: "That bow is not good. Their medicine bow is patched with string and hangs opposite the door. Go back again and say you have wounded a deer and that the string on your bow is broken. Say that you want a bow to kill the deer, then snatch the medicine bow and run as fast as you can. They will not stop you, for you have already given part payment for it."

The boy did as Granny told him, and brought back the bow. She said, "They made you suffer, now we will make them suffer a little."

Granny went into the field and got a large sunflower stalk. She took a long section of this, bored a hole lengthwise through it, and cut seven holes in one side of it. She said the seven holes represented the seven months of winter, and told the boy that when he blew in

it something would come out of it which would resemble snow. It was her intention to bring the snow to punish the two men for frightening the little boy. So she told the boy to blow in the end of the sunflower stalk and taught him to play the following melody on it. A number of Mandan and Hidatsa said this melody "sounded right," though they did not recall hearing the exact succession of tones played on the flageolet. The rhythmic form of the melody is clear and the structure is harmonic (fig. 4).

Granny clothed the boy from head to foot in smoked buffalo hide and told him exactly what to do. She told him to travel in four circles, each smaller than the other, and to play his flute all the time. The first circle was to be at the foot of the clouds (horizon),

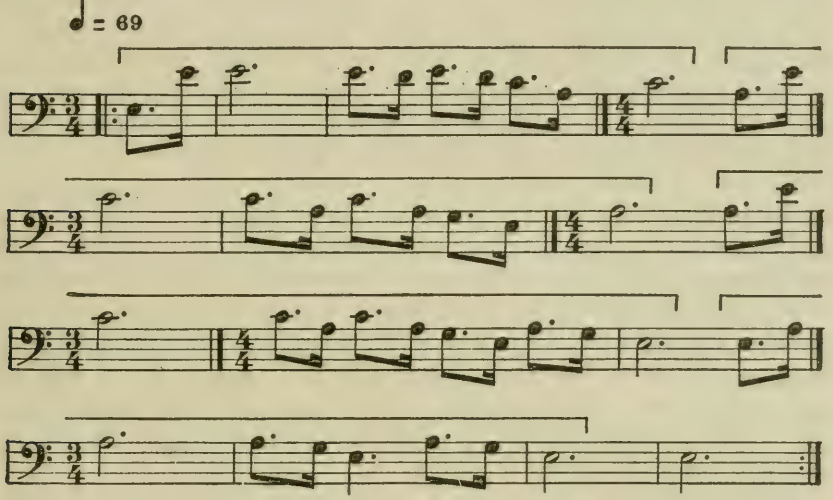


FIG. 4.—Flageolet melody.

the next a little smaller, until the fourth would bring him near the hunters. Granny said, "When you come near to your fathers, they will know it." The boy started out and traveled in a circle at the foot of the clouds, playing on the cornstalk flute which Granny had made for him. The two men were hunting as usual, and when the boy began to play, the snow began to fall. The two men said, "Something is wrong." They made a lodge to stay in until the snow should stop falling, but the snow came faster and faster, covering the lodge until only the peak was above the snow. Their medicine bow was gone, and they could kill no game. Then the more sensible of the two men said, "Someone is causing this." And the other said, "It must be so."

The boy kept circling closer and closer, playing on his flute, and the snow kept falling. The hunters had no food, and they had only

melted snow to drink. When the boy came in sight, they said, "Son, we are having a very bad time." The boy replied: "That is what you gave me when I was up in the tree. Now it is my turn to make *you* do something for *me*." They said that they would, and, after talking it over, they decided to transpose their relationship, so that he would be their father instead of their son. The boy said, "All right." He stopped playing on his flute and the snow stopped falling. The boy made all the snow disappear. The men were too weak to hunt, so the boy got plenty of game for them and made them comfortable. Then he went home.

When he reached home the old Granny said, "What have you done?" The boy told her all about it, and she said: "That is good. You gave them some of their own treatment." After that the two men had to get food and gifts of clothing for the boy, because they had agreed that he should be their father. When the two men had secured these gifts they came to the lodge and told Granny and her grandchild that they had everything to satisfy all requirements, and that they would return with the articles in four days.

Bear-on-the-flat (pl. 14, *b*), who related the three legends next following and recorded their songs, is one of the "story-tellers" of the Mandan tribe. He said that autumn is the time for story-telling, which is continued until a time approximately New Year's, when it ceases. He said that he used to go to a story-teller, offer him gifts, and ask him to tell his stories, but that now he tells stories himself and people come to him with similar requests. He added that those who come to hear him always sleep at his house, as he "talks almost all night."

Wolf Head, who related two "folk tales" and recorded their songs, is one of the old Mandans. His material, as well as the folk tale and its song by Scattered Corn, was obtained when the writer was camping among the Indians.

Origin of the Buffalo Dance Society

Related by Bear-on-the-flat

In relating this legend Bear-on-the-flat said that the society had not been in existence during his life, but that he had heard "the old people" tell of it. He said they told him that the society originated in a dream, or vision, by a man whom they thought must have been a buffalo, though he lived among human beings. They said that perhaps the man had lived among human beings so long he had forgotten that he was a buffalo. At about the time when houses were first built at Heart River this man had a dream and

saw a spirit approaching him. The old people thought this spirit was a buffalo. It said to the man, "Start a dance society." The man replied, "How shall I do it?" The spirit said, "Select men about 60 or 70 years old and tell them that after the society is started whoever dances must give a war bonnet or gift of equal value. There will be no hardships connected with the society and we will dance when the sun turns back" (meaning during the short days of winter). The name of the society was "Paša'ša," and there was a great deal about it that was sacred. The headdress worn by members of the society was made of buffalo hide and had no horns. Except for this they wore no special costume. The men offered a pipe to the headdresses which were laid in a row. They offered the pipe to the headdresses and afterwards to the sky, the cardinal points, and the earth. The only exception was that if a man had a personal fetish he offered his pipe to that before offering it to the sky and the cardinal points. Those who could afford to do so brought presents to the headdresses. They also took coals from the fire, put them in a separate place and laid cedar on them, then they held the headdress in the smoke of the cedar and then shook it to bring a snowstorm, as though the snow were being shaken out of the headdress. It was said that this would bring a blinding snow which would drive the buffalo from the open prairie to the timber and hills where the Indians could get them. The old people said this usually succeeded and the Indians secured many buffalo in this manner. In those days there were few horses and the Indians traveled afoot. The young men knew it was good to have the buffalo driven to the timber and hills, and they willingly gave presents so the old men would dance the buffalo dance. Then they would go and get the buffalo. The old men would not dance this dance of their own accord—only when requested to do so with gifts, and the dance must take place at the full moon. They danced four days. They danced until they were exhausted and then slept in the lodge, resuming the dance as soon as they wakened. They had an abundance of food, as this was part of the offering made with the request for the dance. The members always visited the sweat lodge when the dancing was finished.

It is said that the society numbered 90 or 100 men, who elected their leader. Women were allowed to witness the dancing but took no part in it.

The words of the song were Mandan and are not transcribed. A free translation is as follows: "The leader of the herd says, 'We will walk in that mud.'" The buffalo always avoid mud holes when they are traveling, but in this song the leader of the herd assures them that he will take them safely through.

No. 31. Song of the Leader of the Herd

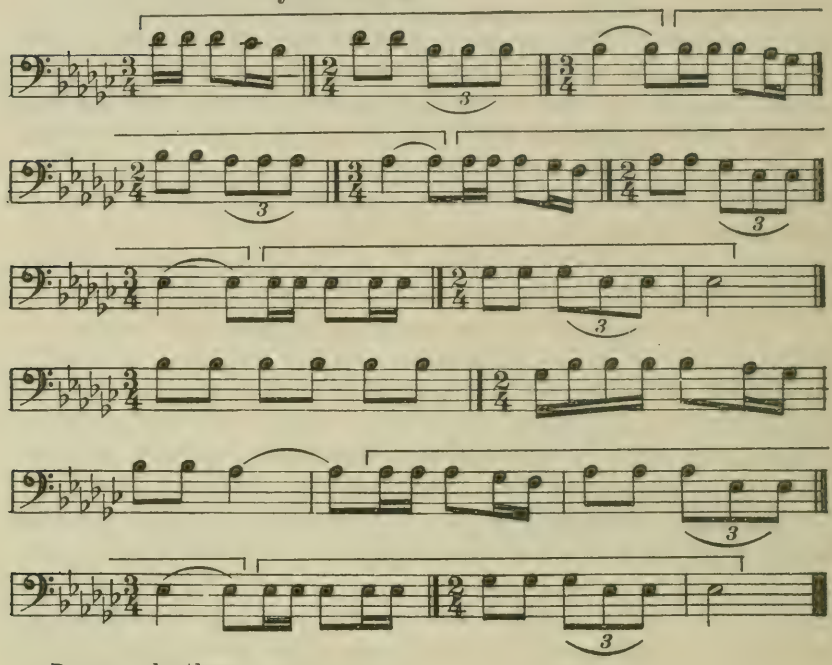
(Catalogue No. 838)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT

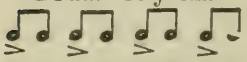
VOICE ♩ = 76

DRUM ♩ = 76

See drum-rhythm below



Drum-rhythm



Analysis.—The rhythm of this song is peculiar, but was steadily maintained throughout four renditions; the intonation, however, was wavering. In rhythmic form the melody resembles many under analysis in that the rhythmic unit appears at the beginning and end, while the third period is in a free rhythm suggesting but not repeating the rhythmic unit. All the tones of the octave occur in the song, which is melodic in structure. More than one-third of the intervals are minor thirds.

THE MOON AND THE DANCERS

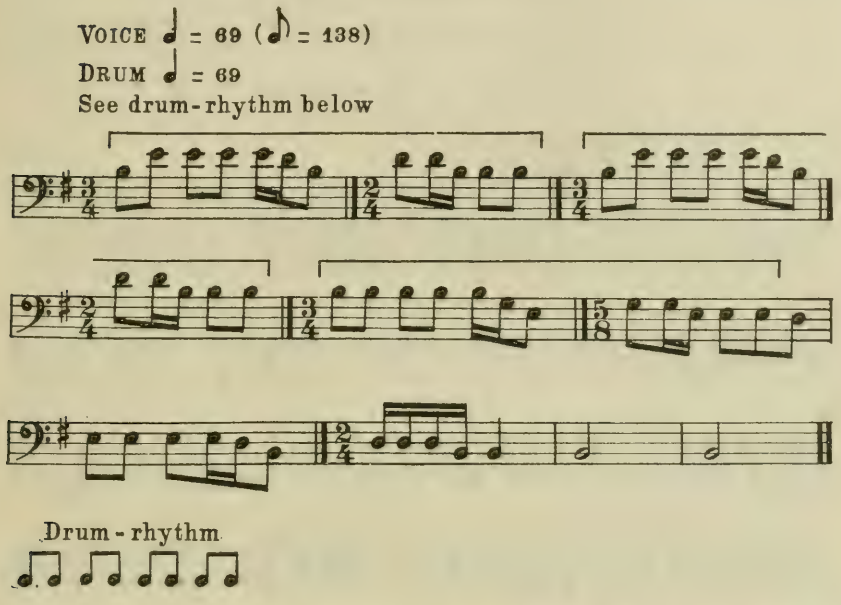
Concerning the following song Bear-on-the-flat said: "Below where the city of Bismarck stands there are two buttes, one on each side of the river.[78] Once the dancers of the young girls' society

[78] Two buttes, similarly located, are mentioned in the Origin of the Little River Women Society, p. 97.

were dancing there and the moon fell in love with them. The moon said, 'I will give you one of my songs to include in the group of your own songs.' So the moon sang this song, which was afterwards used in the victory dances and also when the young girls danced from house to house in the village."

No. 32. Song of the Moon (Catalogue No. 842)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



Analysis.—This song contains only the tones of the minor triad and seventh. It is harmonic in structure and two-thirds of the intervals are downward progressions. The fourth is prominent, though often broken by a passing tone. More than half of the intervals are minor thirds. The rhythmic unit is long and occurs three times. It is interesting to note that the 5–8 measures were uniform in all the renditions.

THE BLACK-TAILED DEER

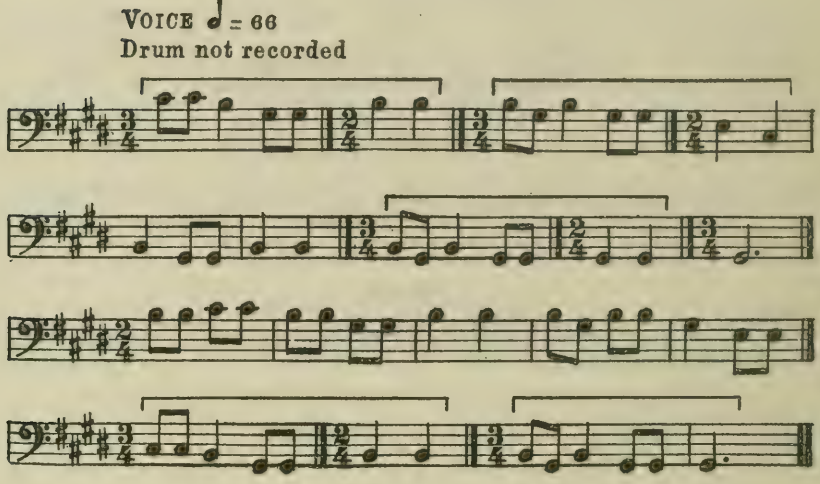
The following legend was related by Bear-on-the flat: In the old days when the people were pressed for food they dug pitfalls. One man had made such a trap and one day, late in the fall, he found a fat black-tailed deer in it. He took his bow and arrow to shoot, but the deer said, "Don't send it." The man hesitated, but the deer said again, "Don't send it." This happened three times, and the fourth time the deer said, "I am fat and in good condition. If you kill me you will probably have a good feast, but it will last only a day or

two, while if you let me go I will consider something good for you which will last a long time."

The man thought that the deer must be a person to talk in this way, so he pulled it out of the pitfall, wiped it off, and told it to go free. Thence the deer started off slowly, stretching itself from being so long in a cramped position. When it was about far enough away so that an arrow could not reach it the deer stopped and stood broadside to the man while it sung the following song:

No. 33. Song of the Deer (Catalogue No. 837)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



WORDS (HIDATSA)

ma'pimata'_____the first snowstorm
tsagi'du_____is good
ma'pi_____the day
a'wagata'rats_____not seeing
(Free translation: "At the first snowstorm times are good. I came near never seeing that day again.")

Analysis.—The rhythmic form of this song is interesting, the rhythmic unit appearing at the beginning and end, while the third period consists chiefly of phrases which resemble the rhythmic unit. The "working out" of the rhythm in the third period of a song has been noted among the Chippewa and Sioux, as well as in songs of the present series. Several renditions of this song were recorded, differing only in the length of the tone which follows the third occurrence of the rhythmic unit. The melody contains the tones of the fourth five-toned scale, yet 22 of the 30 intervals are minor thirds.

FOLK TALES

The Turtle Who Went to War

Related by Wolf Head [79]

There was once a snapping turtle [80] who wanted to go to war. He asked the coyote to go with him and said, "Run around and let me see how fast you can run." The coyote ran very fast and the turtle did not take him because he ran so fast. Next he asked the frog and said, "Let me see how fast you can go." The frog went just about as fast as the turtle, so he decided to take the frog with him.

Their enemies lived across the river. The turtle said, "Where shall we kill our enemies? Shall we stay down by the water or go up to their village?" The frog said, "We are such great men that we ought to go right into their houses and cut off their heads."

They swam across the river and the turtle went into the enemy's house first, the frog coming after him. The turtle cut off the head of one of the chiefs of the enemy and took his scalp. He also killed the wife of the chief. Then the turtle tried to get out of the door but the doorsill was so high that he could not get out. So he went in the hole for the stones in the sweat lodge, taking the scalp with him. The turtle hid himself there. The enemy looked around and found the turtle with the scalps. Then the enemy called a neighboring chief to come and kill the turtle. This chief came over and wanted to put the turtle in a corn mortar and smash him. The turtle said, "The corn mortar is my house." Then the enemy chief said, "The fire is my medicine, let us put the turtle in the fire and burn him." The turtle said, "That is my house." Then the enemy chief said, "The water current is my medicine. If a log comes down the river the water current whirls it around, so I will put the turtle in the water current." The turtle acted very much afraid when he heard this, so the enemy chief called every one to come to the river. He sang four songs, and as he sang the fourth song he threw the turtle into the river. As the chief threw the turtle into the river the turtle pulled off his scalp. So the turtle was in the water with two scalps. He showed himself in the water and sang the following song:

---

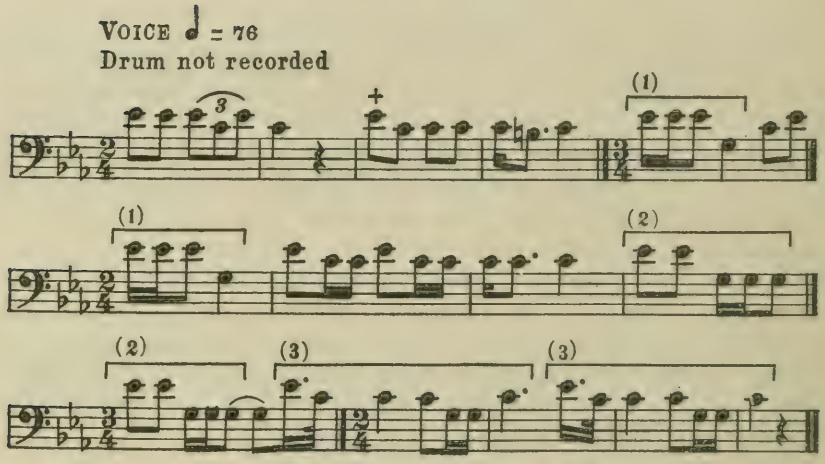
[79] This story was translated to Scattered Corn and to Wounded Face, who made no corrections in it. Ben Benson added the incident of the testing of the coyote. The same story was recorded among the Chippewa in 1908 by the present writer. The Chippewa version included the testing of several animals preliminary to the starting of the expedition and the taking of scalps at the close. In the Chippewa version the war party comprised a large turtle and a company of small turtles.

[80] This variety of turtle is called by the Mandan *puké*. It grows to great size and hides in the mud. It is said that one of these turtles has been known to attempt to drag a man into the current of the river.

No. 34. Song of the Turtle Who Went to War

(Catalogue No. 893)

Recorded by WOLF HEAD



(Free translation of words: "The turtle is going to war. He kills a man and a woman. Who hits it? (counting coup). The frog hits it. They had a good time dancing with the scalps they took.")

Analysis.—This melody contains only the minor triad and the seventh which is raised a semitone in its only occurrence. The rhythmic form is interesting and clear. Three rhythmic units occur, each containing a count-division of an eighth and two sixteenth notes. The melody progresses chiefly by minor sixths and minor thirds, which is an unusual characteristic. These intervals are almost equal in number in ascending and descending progression, and constitute three-fourths of the entire number of intervals.

THE MAN WHO MARRIED THE BIRDS

RELATED BY WOLF HEAD

A man lived down in the south and he went toward the west on a journey. This man on his journey came to a large lake in which there were many birds. Every bird that can swim was on that lake. The man said, "I will make a trap and catch these birds for my living." Then he said to himself, "I had better make a house for myself first and then make the trap." He went into the woods and met a porcupine woman, whom he married. He said to the porcupine woman, "I have found lots of birds that we can catch and eat." When his house was finished, he went to the lake and caught a goose, but instead of killing the goose he married her. The next day he

went to the lake to look at his trap and found a white goose, whom he married also. The third day he went to the lake to look at his trap and he found a crane, whom he married also. The next day he went again and found another bird, a heron, whom he married. The next day he got a duck and married her, and the day after that he found a diving duck with a white bill, whom he married also.

The porcupine woman said, "How is this? You said we would have birds to eat but you marry them all."

The next day the man went over to the lake and caught a little yellow bird, whom he married. The next day he went and got a big bird (Mandan term, *rist*), and married her also. The man said, "We will all dance." The wives said, "How are we going to dance?" He said, "Wait for me." This was in the fall of the year. He went out and got a great deal of "white fox" (a plumed grass) and gave each of his wives as much as they could hold; he also gave them white and yellow corn. Then he said, "I have to make a drum before we dance." He went out and saw a leaf and said, "This will be a drum, and the cover will be antelope hide, trimmed with a pattern of goose tracks around the side." Then the leaf turned into a drum covered with antelope hide and with a pattern of goose tracks around the edge. He took another leaf and said, "This will be my rattle." So the leaf turned into a rattle.

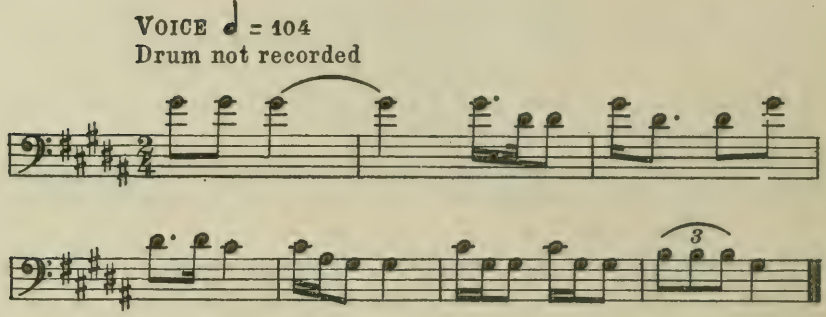
When they started to dance he said to the porcupine woman, "You must dance last, behind the birds." The first goose whom he married was the leader. The man said, "We are going to dance four days and the dance will be called the Goose Dance." So they went out to dance and they danced four times and then went back to their house. The second day that they danced the man was out also, and one of the geese said to him, "Winter is coming. Perhaps you will kill us." This was in the late fall and it was snowing. The man sang every day while they danced and he always shut his eyes. On the third day when the man shut his eyes the same goose said, "If you sing and shut your eyes again we will fly away and save our lives." They went out to dance on the fourth day and the man shut his eyes again as he sang. Before that day the geese had sung with the man, but on that day, after his eyes had been shut for a while, he noticed that the birds were not singing. Then he opened his eyes and saw them all flying away. He ran after them and said, "Do not fly away. I have always loved you." But the geese and all the birds kept flying away toward the south.

After the birds had flown away he went back to his house to find the porcupine woman, but she was gone too.

No. 35. Song of the Man Who Married the Birds

(Catalogue No. S94)

Recorded by WOLF HEAD



Analysis.—This song resembles the preceding in its minor tonality but differs from it in both melodic and rhythmic form. The preceding song was characterized by minor sixths and minor thirds; the present song is characterized by fourths, which constitute two-thirds of the intervals. There is more action in this story, and the interval of a fourth has been noted repeatedly in similar songs. This melody has no rhythmic unit and contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth and seventh.

THE COYOTE AND THE SKUNK

RELATED BY SCATTERED CORN [81]

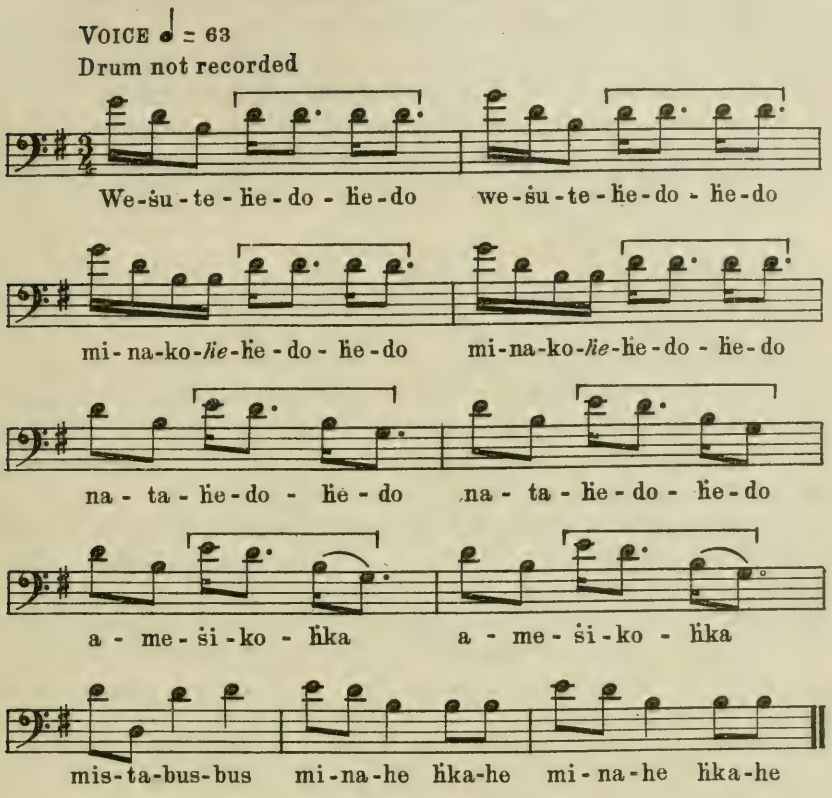
The coyote and the skunk were both hungry, so the coyote said, "Let us get up a play (or pretense). We will go over to that prairie dog village and get some food." Then he went into the lake and cut some hollow rushes. He cut them in sections about a foot long and tied several to each ear of the skunk and also to his tail. He told the skunk to dance, and the hollow reeds rattled. The coyote decided that the skunk should dance and he would be the drummer, so they went together to the prairie dog village. All the prairie dogs said, "Come and see this wonderful thing that has come to our village." The skunk danced and the coyote drummed and all the prairie dogs came to look at them. Slowly the skunk and the coyote moved away from the village. The prairie dogs did not notice this because they were so interested, and they followed the skunk and the coyote, who led them a long way from their village. Then the coyote and the skunk ate all the prairie dogs.

This story has been made into a play by the little girls, who walk in a line singing the following song and each holding the dress of the girl in front of her.

[81] This folk tale was related also by Wolf Head and Crow's Heart. The several versions were compared and the one herewith presented was found to be the most complete.

No. 36. Dancing Song of the Skunk (Catalogue No. 820)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

we′šuteȟe′doȟe′do ..... my tail rattles
mi′nakoȟe′doȟe′do ..... my ears rattle
na′taȟe′doȟe′do ..... each end rattles
a′meši′koȟka ..... my whole body rattles
mis′tabus′bus ..... my face is striped
mi′nahe ȟka′he ..... my back is striped

Analysis.—The accented tones of this song present an unusual monotony. The first four measures begin with an accented G, the next five with D, and the last two with E. The descent of an octave in the third measure from the last extends the compass of the song to 13 tones. The low tone is short and was simply touched by the voice, as it was below the singer's natural range. Forty-nine progressions occur in the song, 28 of which are minor thirds. The song is melodic in structure and contains the tones of the major triad and sixth.

MANDAN WOMEN'S SOCIETIES[82]

Songs of three Mandan women's societies are here presented, these being the Skunk, Enemy, and Little River Women Societies. The Goose Women Society is considered in a previous section (see pp. 39–47). The Skunk and Enemy Societies are said to have been of Hidatsa origin, but organizations appear to have existed independently in the two tribes. The Little River Women Society is admitted to have been Mandan in its origin.

Skunk Society

This was said to include little girls betwen the ages of 8 and 13. After the return of a successful war party they went at evening and "serenaded the warriors," for which they were rewarded with gifts. One singer usually led the society in these serenades. Lowie[83] amplifies this information by stating that the faces of the girls were "painted black with charcoal except for a triangular area tapering from the center of the forehead toward the nose, which was daubed with white clay. An eagle plume was stuck upright in the back of the head. There was a single male singer with a drum." He states further that the painting of the face was intended to represent the appearance of skunks. Admission into the society was purchased from a "mother" by many gifts, and a four nights' dance followed by a feast signalized the recognition of girls as members of the organization.

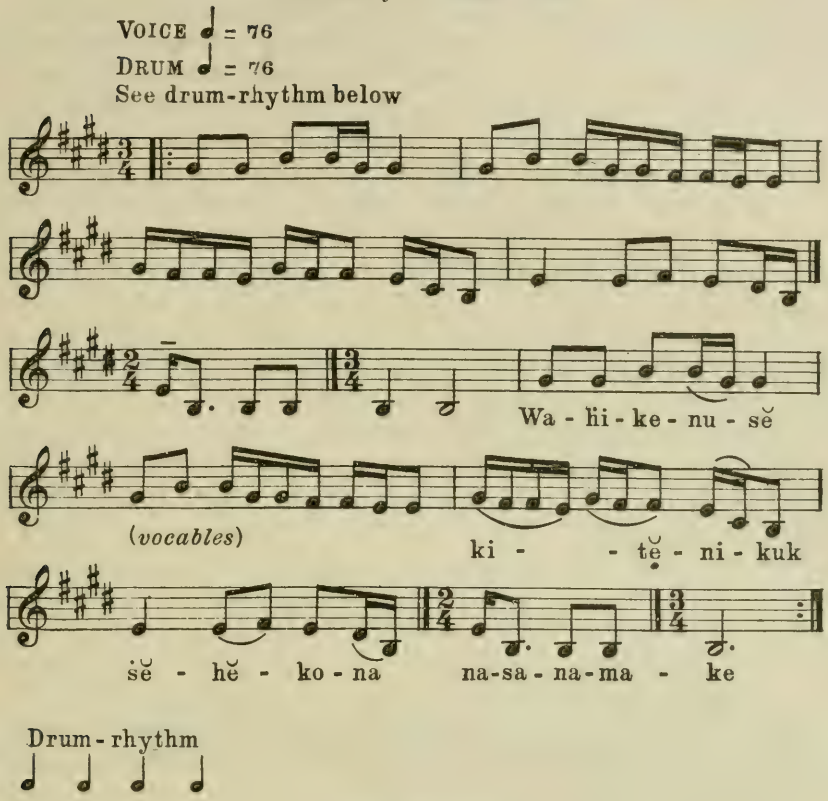
Four songs of this society were recorded, but only one is transcribed.

---

[82] Cf. Lowie, Societies of the Hidatsa and Mandan Indians, pp. 323–354.
[83] Ibid., p. 325.

No. 37. "He Never Will Return" (Catalogue No. 807)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



Drum-rhythm

WORDS (MANDAN)

wa'ĥikenusĕ'.....that bad one
ki'tĕnikuk'.....will never return home
śĕhĕ'kona.....the coyotes
nasa'namakĕ.....will prey upon his body

Analysis.—This melody progresses chiefly by major seconds, though the fourth and minor third are frequent intervals. The tone material is that of the fourth five-toned scale. In structure the song is harmonic, with a compass of an octave. While rhythmic in general character, it contains no rhythmic unit.

ENEMY SOCIETY

Scattered Corn said that she belonged to this society when she was about 10 years old, adding that "no one ever bought the society from us, so we still keep it."

Concerning this society Lowie says:[84] "A crier called all the women together. The members marched two abreast. Two long

[84] Op. cit., p. 327.

hooked poles were stuck into the ground by a man, and two such sticks were afterwards carried by the two leaders and a similar pair by the two women in the rear of the procession. The poles were wrapped with otter skin and decorated with eagle feathers. All the women wore a headband decorated with crossing eagle feathers and a bunch of feathers dyed red. . . . The dance took place originally as a jubilee over a slain enemy; in later times it was performed whenever some member, or outsider, provided a feast for the society. In dancing the performers approached the fireplace and then moved back again. There was no uniform step; some danced faster, others more slowly. A performance lasted four nights."

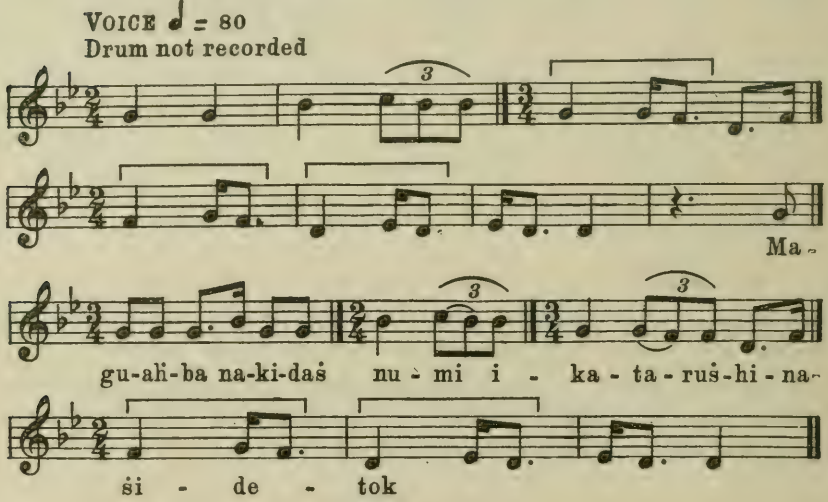
Hairy-coat sang for Dr. Lowie a song with the same words as the song herewith presented. It is unfortunate that the melody is not available for comparison. The words recorded by Dr. Lowie, with their translation, are as follows:[85]

"Màkooxpa′	na′kirac	ī′ru	mi	i′katā′ruc	hiri′ts
Woman friend	your husband	fixedly (?)	me	he looks at	he did it

na′cirihitō′k?
Will you throw him away?

No. 38. "He Stared At Me" (Catalogue No. 819)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (HIDATSA)

maguāĥ′ba——my dear friend
na′kidaś——your husband
numi′ [86]——at me
ikataruś′hidīts——how he stared!
na′śidetok——will you throw him away?

[85] Op. cit., p. 330.
[86] The first syllable of this word was omitted by the singer.

Analysis.—Several renditions of this song were recorded, and in them all the intonation and time were somewhat wavering. The rhythmic unit is short and crisp, but, in accordance with a frequent custom, it does not appear in the portion of the song which contains the words. Only one interval larger than a minor third occurs in the song, this being an ascending fourth. All the tones of the octave except the second are used in the song, which is melodic in structure and minor in tonality. The song ends on the unaccented portion of the measure. (Cf. No. 12.)

The Little River Women Society [87]

Young girls 12 to 18 years of age joined this society by purchasing the songs from women who had been members for about 10 years and who thereby retired from participation in the ceremony. A woman who "sold the songs" received valuable gifts from the young girl to whom she sold them, such gifts usually including a horse or a buffalo robe. She also made the headdress worn by the girl at the first meeting of the society which she attended. Meetings of the society were always held in the spring and might be repeated in the fall if some one wished to join the society at that time. Scattered Corn, who recorded the ceremonial songs of the society and contributed many details to the accompanying description, was a member of the society from her sixteenth to her twenty-seventh year. In describing the society she mentioned the names of 37 women who were members of it during the term of her own membership. Wounded Face, who assisted in this narrative, was present when she joined the society and was the only person living (in 1915) who attended that ceremony. Sitting Rabbit (pl. 15, *b*) also was familiar with the usage of the society, and contributed information concerning it.

ORIGIN OF THE LITTLE RIVER WOMEN SOCIETY

On the west bank of the Missouri River is a bare peak known as Eagle Nose,[88] and on the opposite bank of the river is another peak. In Eagle Nose Peak, as well as in all the buttes and in the trees, there used to live certain strange beings called "spirit women."

[87] This subject was first studied in 1912 with Bear-on-the-flat as informant, Mr. C. Hoffman interpreting, the material being translated through the Hidatsa language, as no Mandan interpreter was available. Later it was taken up with Scattered Corn, and a few days later with Sitting Rabbit, James Holding Eagle interpreting the Mandan language. The account given by all was substantially the same, differing only in details. This material was combined and in 1915 was translated into Mandan by James Holding Eagle, and was discussed by Scattered Corn and other of the older Mandan. Some details were added and the principal songs were recorded a second time (see pp. 100–101). A slightly different origin legend is recorded by Lowie, op. cit., pp. 341–342.

[88] The native term is translated Bird Beak by Wilson (Hidatsa Agriculture, p. 7), but Eagle Nose is the common translation among the writer's informants. The butte is located about 15 miles below the present site of Mandan, N. Dak.

Long ago two Mandan women were taken away by the spirit women. One came back, but the other lived in Eagle Nose Peak, and it was through her help that the Mandan women received the Little River Women Society. All the spirit women who lived in the buttes and the trees once met together and decided to teach a society to the Mandans. Then this woman said she would go as their interpreter, because she understood the language of the spirit women and also that of the Mandan people. The spirit women did not have this society. They planned it in order to give it to the Mandan, and while they were in the bare peak planning the society each woman wore as a headdress one of the bright green snakes that are sometimes found in the buttes.

When all was ready, the spirit women came out of the bare peak, crossed the Missouri River, and started for the Mandan village, still wearing the bright green snakes twined around their heads. After they had gone a little distance they met an eagle, who said, "Let me go with you, and I will give you one of my feathers to add to your headdress." The spirit women took one of the feathers and let the eagle come with them. For this reason a feather was always worn in the front of the headdress of this society. Next they met a coyote, who said, "If I do not belong to your society it will not succeed." The coyote gave them a song which was always sung at the close of the ceremony (No. 43), and asked them to add to their headdress a wreath of plumy grass which resembled his fur. In return for this he was allowed to go with them and share the feast. As they came to a creek they met a bear, who said, "You may meet trouble on your way, so you must wear claws to protect you from enemies you meet and from those who may follow you." The bear also gave them a song (No. 41). For this reason the bear was allowed to go with them and share the feast, and when the ceremony was held there were two women who wore necklaces of bear's claws.

The spirit women came to a creek and there they saw an otter and a flat clamshell. Both wanted to join the new society, so the spirit women allowed them to come. For this reason, when the ceremony was held, a woman walked in the middle of the procession wearing the fur of an otter ornamented with a polished clamshell. The song given the women by the shell is fourth in the group of ceremonial songs (No. 42).

When the spirit women entered the Mandan village they were still wearing the bright green snakes twined around their heads, together with the eagle feather and the wreath of plumy grass. They also wore the bear claws, the otter fur, and the polished shell. Their feet did not touch the ground as they entered the village because they were spirit women. They said, "We bring the society because you

are the people of the Missouri River," and they told the young women to bring food for a feast. The young women took food and gifts into their lodge. The spirit women ate but did not talk—they only whispered to each other. After the feast they taught certain songs (Nos. 39–43) to the maidens, and because they were spirit songs they were easy to learn. The maidens learned them all that night. The spirit women also taught them the Little River Women ceremony in which the songs were to be sung. Around their heads the spirit women still wore the living snakes, but they taught the Mandan maidens to braid grass to resemble snakes and told them to make and wear such headdresses whenever they held a ceremony of the society.

Then the spirit women went away, but the Mandan women did everything as they had been instructed by the spirit women.

CEREMONY OF THE LITTLE RIVER WOMEN SOCIETY

This ceremony, as already stated, took place in the spring of the year, but could be held also in the fall. Four days were required for the ceremony, and during the intervening nights the women slept in the ceremonial lodge. They could go to their homes during the day, and usually worked in the gardens in the mornings. A procession was held in the early evening, the crier summoning the women to their lodge to prepare for it. At the time of the procession the men singers, usually five in number, took their places at the drum in the center of the village. The Little River women formed in a line within their lodge. All wore headdresses of braided grass representing snakes and having an eagle feather in the front. The procession was in a regular order. At the head and also at the end of the procession walked a woman wearing a necklace of bear claws and midway the length of the line was a woman wearing an otter skin ornamented with a polished shell.[89] The procession passed around the village circle, moving from east to west, and at the cardinal points the maidens paused and danced for a few moments. When they had completed the circuit of the village they formed a circle outside their lodge and danced, singing the four principal songs that were taught them by the spirit women (Nos. 39–42). Then they danced into the door of the lodge, two by two, singing a dance

[89] Scattered Corn said that the spirit women came to the Mandans when they were living in two villages, both of which seem to have had the ceremony at the same time. Some said, however, that "as the real Mandans lived at Deapolis the spirit women probably went there and the women from Deapolis took the ceremony to the women at the Fort Clark village." At a later time one of the villages was destroyed and the societies of the two villages combined, so that there were twice as many wearers of bear claws and special ornaments as were indicated by the spirit women. Thus in later years there were four women with necklaces of bear claws and two with ornaments of otter skin and polished shell. This narrative, however, gives the original number. Scattered Corn was one of the women who wore a bear-claw necklace.

song (No. 44). After entering, they danced around the lodge singing the same song, then seated themselves and rested a while.

The drum was brought into the lodge, the singers took their places, and many spectators came to watch the dancers. After a short time the singers at the drum started the Bear song (No. 41) and all the Little River Women rose and danced. The two women who wore the bear-claw necklaces danced near together and close to the fire. After the song was finished the dancers remained standing and the women who wore the bear claws gave presents to those from whom they purchased their membership in the society; they also gave gifts to all their relatives and friends. This was followed by the singing of the Shell song (No. 42), and the woman who wore the polished shell gave gifts as the women with the bear claws had done. Any songs could be sung after these, but the four principal songs taught by the spirit women were sung several times during each evening. At the close it was customary to sing the song of the coyote, which also marked the end of the entire ceremony. All danced and the singing was peculiar in that it began slowly and accelerated in tempo.

Each night a rawhide thong was stretched across the lodge and on it the headdresses were hung. If the women awoke and found that one of their number was missing they at once instituted a search and compelled her to return. As they went about the village seeking for her they sang the following Mandan words to the melody of the first song given by the spirit women (No. 39):

i'mupa---------- my companion (see p. 53)
wa'ani---------- hear
wahu'na---------- come

At the end of the fourth day the women who had taken part in the ceremony were "cleansed" by an old man who had "eagle medicine." Their bodies were brushed with a spray of wild peppermint dipped in water, the old man meantime singing his own medicine song.

The casting away of the headdresses marked the conclusion of the ceremony, all the headdresses being placed together.

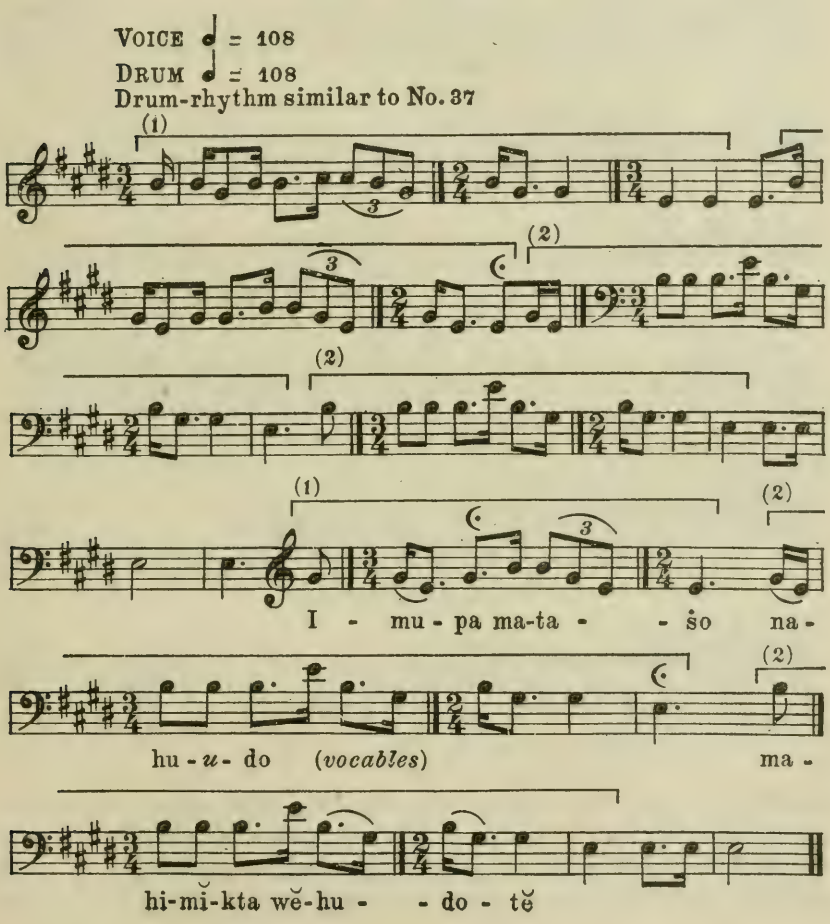
It is said that once a member of the society would not believe that the braided grass represented a snake. After a ceremony she did not put her headdress with those of the other women but threw it carelessly aside. Later a friend saw it and placed it with the others. After a time the first woman went to the place where the wreaths had been laid and instead of braided grasses she saw a heap of living snakes.

The principal songs of the spirit women (Nos. 39, 40, 41, and 42) were recorded by Scattered Corn in 1912 and again in 1915, the two

series being made on phonographs of different manufacture. On comparing the transcriptions we find that the pitch of every song is the same in the record made in 1915 as in the record made in 1912 and that, with one exception, the tempo is the same in the two series. The exception in tempo in No. 39 which was sung at ♩=100 in 1912 and ♩=108 in 1915, a difference so slight as to be of no importance except that the others duplicated the time exactly. In Nos. 40 and 41 the tone values were precisely the same in the two series (cf. analysis of No. 85). In No. 42 there are slight differences in the tone values of the first four measures, after which the transcriptions of the two records are identical. Both transcriptions of No. 39 are given herewith.

No. 39. Song of the Spirit Women (Catalogue No. 800)

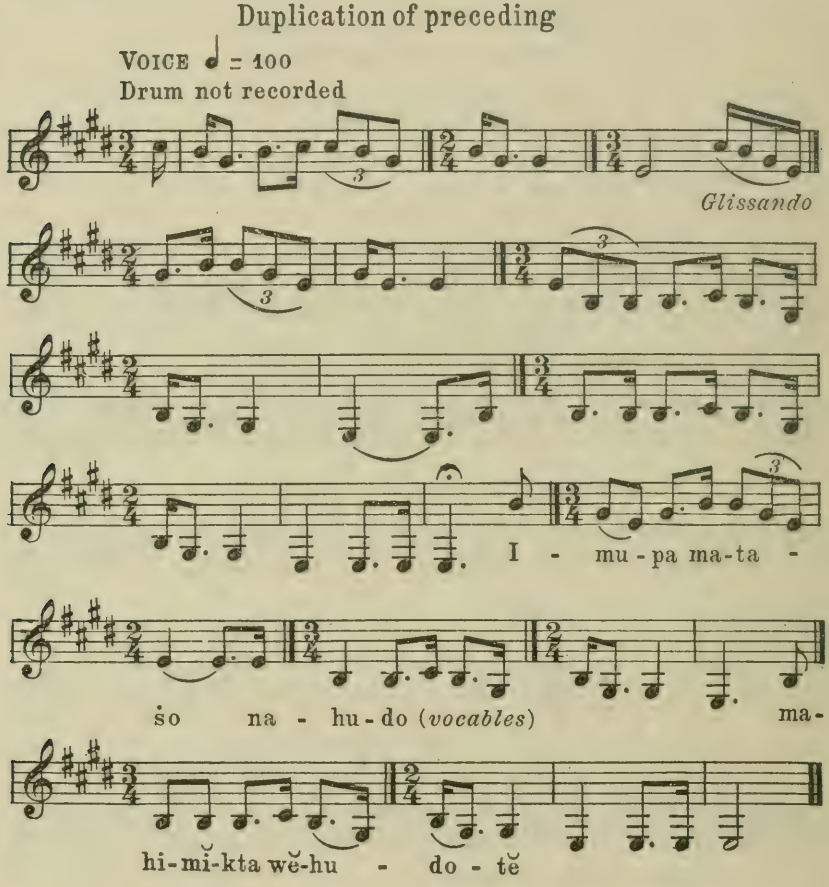
Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

i'mupa	my best friend (a term used by one young girl in addressing another)
mata'šo	whence
nahu'do	have you come?
ma'himĭkta	from a bare peak
wĕhu'dotĕ	I have come

Analysis.—The transcriptions of this song as recorded in 1912 and 1915 are typical examples of a somewhat imperfect and a more exact



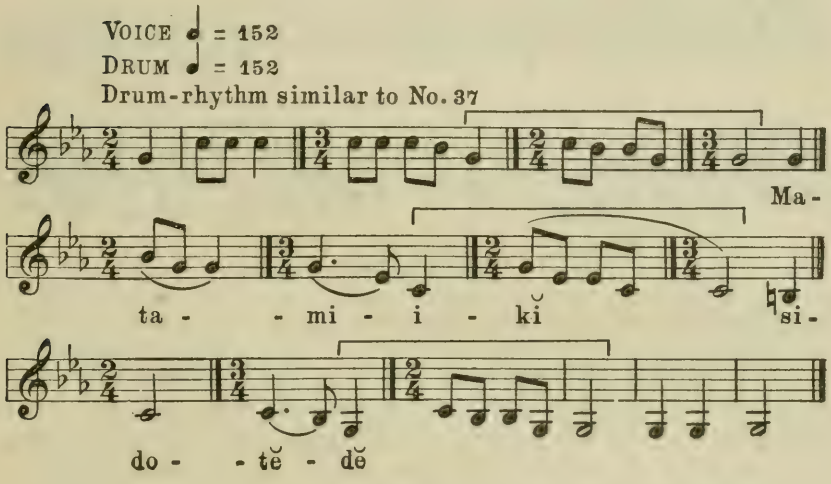
rendition of an Indian song. This was the first song recorded by Scattered Corn and the strangeness of the process may have distracted her attention, or there may have been some circumstance at the time, or some person present who made it difficult for her to con-

centrate her mind on the singing. The second form of the melody is undoubtedly the correct form, as it has a rhythmic coherence which did not vary in the four repetitions of the song. It will be noted that the record made in 1912 contains no rhythmic unit, while that made in 1915 contains two rhythmic units. No drum was used when the songs were recorded in 1912 but in the later recording a drum was used, the drum and voice maintaining the same tempo.

Attention is directed to the compass of the melody (13 tones), the extreme intervals of which were sung with good intonation, though the lowest tone was sung softly. The song is harmonic in structure and contains only the tones of the major triad and sixth. Two-thirds of the progressions are downward and 71 per cent are major and minor thirds.

No. 40. "The Missouri Women" (Catalogue No. 801)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

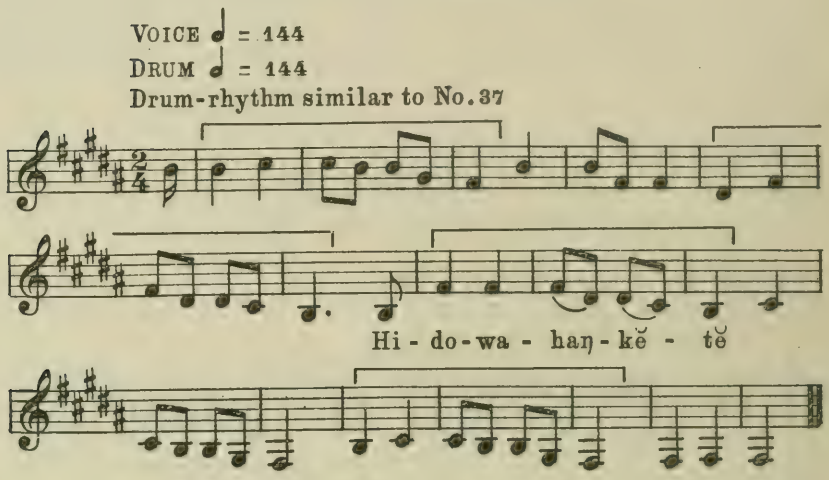
ma'tamiiki'_____the Missouri (River) women
si'dotĕdĕ_____are the best

Analysis.—In the analysis of this song as recorded in 1912 it was stated that "the intonation is wavering in the latter portion of the song but the tone transcribed as B natural is always kept in semitone relation to the tones which precede and follow it." The intonation was good throughout the four renditions of the song recorded in 1915, the singer having a poise and confidence which was lacking on

the former occasion. The song is harmonic in structure and minor in tonality. Two-thirds of the intervals are downward, as in the preceding song. The interval of a fourth is prominent in the structure of the melody, though it appears only three times as a progression. The tones are those of the minor triad and seventh (see No. 12).

No. 41. Song of the Bear (Catalogue No. 802)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

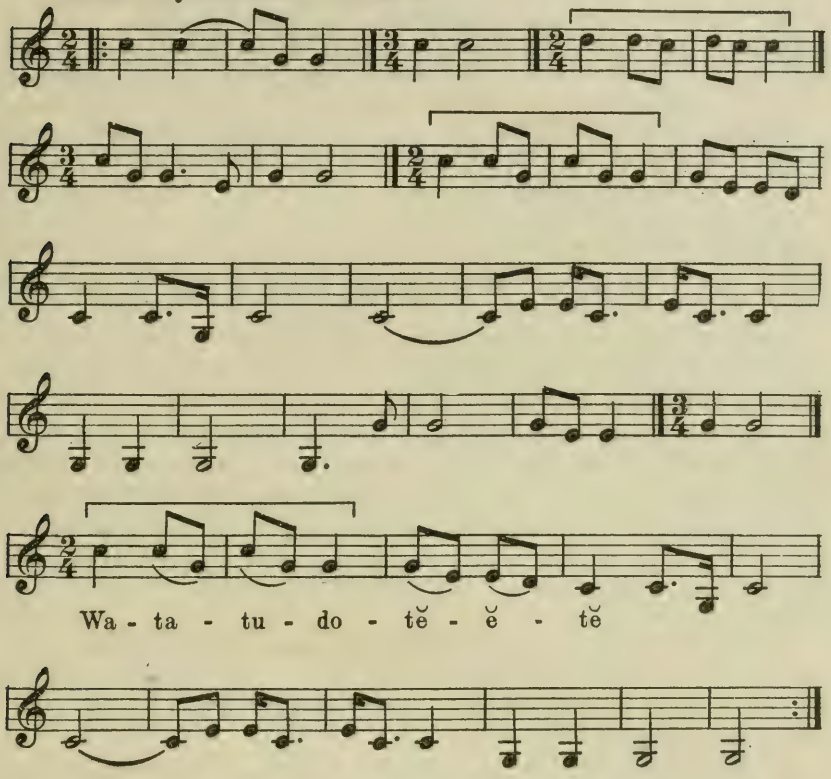
hido′wahaŋ′kĕtĕ_____here I am

Analysis.—Five renditions of this song were recorded in 1915, the pitch, tempo, tone-values, and words being the same as in the renditions of 1912. The melody is somewhat more elaborate than the two preceding. It contains the tones of the fourth five-toned scale and in structure is melodic with harmonic framework. One-half the progressions are major seconds, the next in frequency being minor thirds. The rhythmic unit is clear and occurs four times with a partial repetition after the third phrase.

No. 42. Song of the Shell (Catalogue No. 803)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN

VOICE ♩ = 160
DRUM ♩ = 160
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



WORDS (MANDAN)

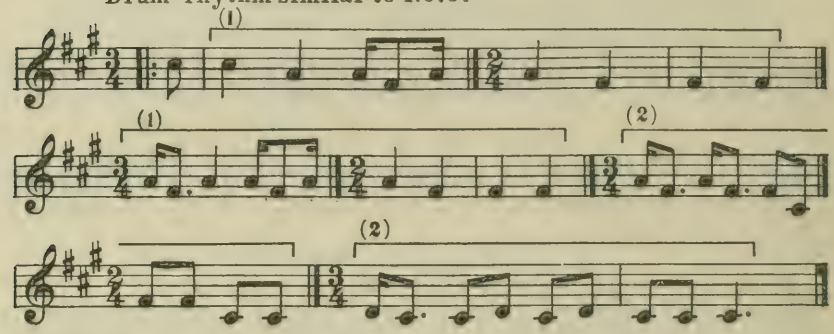
wa'tatudo'tĕĕtĕ----------here are shells

Analysis.—The indicated tempo of this song is that of the measures containing the rhythmic unit, the others being sung somewhat rubato. It is interesting to note that the slight hastening or retarding of the tempo occurred on the same measures in the records made in 1912 and 1915, the indicated tempo being identical. At already stated, there are slight differences in the tone values of the first four measures, after which the transcriptions of the two records are uniform. Seven renditions were recorded in 1912 and about the same number in 1915, the song being short and the singer being allowed to continue until the phonograph cylinder was filled. Almost half the intervals are fourths. The song has a compass of 11 tones and is major in tonality.

No. 43. Song of the Coyote (b) (Catalogue No. 804)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN

VOICE ♩. = 104
DRUM ♩ = 104
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37

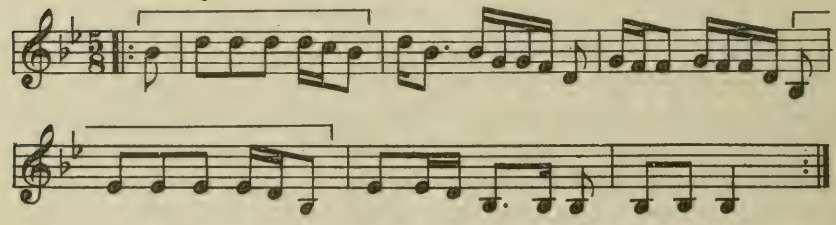


Analysis.—Eight renditions of this song were recorded, differing only in that the first phrase was omitted in two renditions and that one had a slightly different ending. There was no break in the time between the renditions, which is somewhat unusual in this series. Repetitions of the rhythmic units comprise the entire song, the second occurrence of each unit beginning with a slightly different count-division than the first. The song is minor in tonality and progresses chiefly by minor thirds, which constitute more than half the entire number of intervals.

No. 44. Dancing Song of the Little River Women Society

(Catalogue No. 805)

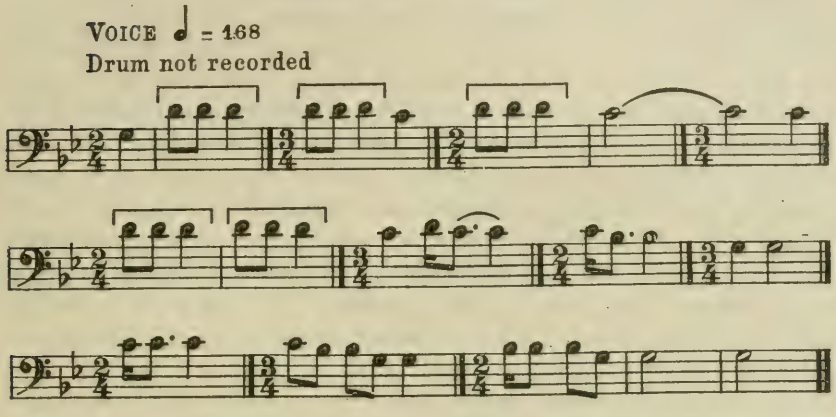
Recorded by SCATTERED CORN

VOICE ♪ = 144
DRUM ♪ = 144
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 32

Analysis.—This is a bright, lively melody, major in tonality and containing all the tones of the octave except the seventh. Seven renditions were recorded without a break in the time. The descent of an octave in the second measure is interesting and the movement of the entire melody is broader than in a majority of the present series of songs.

No. 45. Song of the Little River Women Society (a)

(Catalogue No. 872)

Recorded by SITTING RABBIT

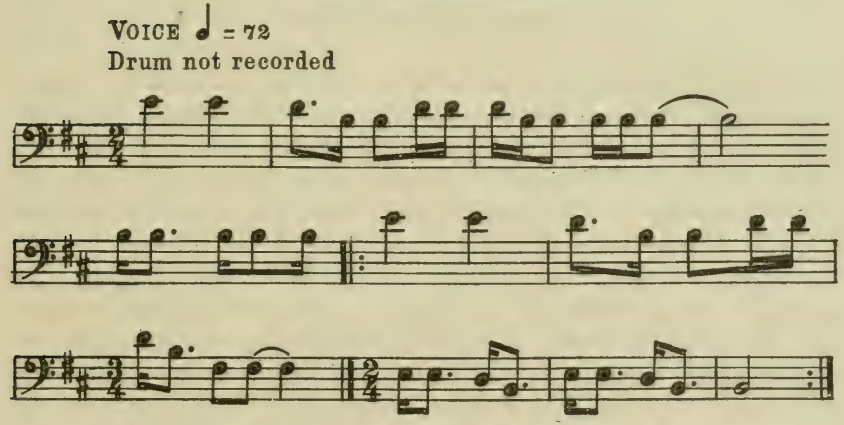


Analysis.—This and the next song were recorded by a man who had been one of the "singers" at meetings of the Little River Women Society. This song begins and ends on the same tone, the first interval carrying the melody up to the highest tone in its compass. The melodic material is scanty, comprising only the minor triad and fourth. The principal interval of progression is a whole tone.

No. 46. Song of the Little River Women Society (b)

(Catalogue No. 873)

Recorded by SITTING RABBIT



Analysis.—This song is entirely different in character from the preceding and contains the tones of the major triad and fourth. The two songs have about the same number of intervals, but No. 46 has a compass of 11 tones and No. 45 of only 5 tones. The present melody progresses chiefly by major thirds.

MANDAN AND HIDATSA MEN'S SOCIETIES

It is not the intention of the present paper to offer an extended consideration of Mandan and Hidatsa societies. Maximilian noted these societies,[90] and his information corresponds in its most important phases with that secured in 1910 and 1911 by Doctor Lowie.[91] Wounded Face, one of Doctor Lowie's informants, was consulted by the writer in 1912, 1915, and 1918, resulting in some duplication of material. Certain societies existed in both tribes, while others were limited to one tribe, the most important of the latter being the Stone Hammer Society of the Hidatsa. Songs of this society are herewith presented, but it has not seemed expedient to attempt a tribal classification of the songs of other societies. If a song were attributed to one tribe, this statement is contained in the description of the song.

According to the writer's informants the sequence of Hidatsa age-societies was as follows:[92] Notched Stick, Stone Hammer, Fox, Lumpwood, Black Mouth, Crazy Dog, Intended (or wanted) -to-be-a-dog, Half-shaved-heads, Buffalo, and Bad Ear. The sequence of the Mandan societies was: White, Fox, Dog (including Young Dog and Foolish Dog), Black Mouth, Buffalo, and Horse (Wounded Face said this society did not originate with the Mandan but was bought by them from the Sioux. He has seen dances of this society). The very old men were said to belong to the Coarse Hair Society.

The manner of purchasing admission to a society and of progressing from one to another has been described by previous writers and need not be repeated. The term "Stone Hammer" given as the name of the second Hidatsa society was criticized by the writer's informants, who said the native word referred to the mallet used for pounding meat or crushing bones, an implement with a stone head, the ends of which were alike. They said the Hidatsa have another word for "hammer," an implement in which the two ends of the head are different in shape. The former term is continued, as it is familiar by usage. The native term is *mi'i*, stone, *maü'paki*, literally mallet. The word "Lumpwood" was also regarded by those who spoke both languages as an inadequate translation. They said the native term (*mi'dahi'si*, *mi'da*, wood, *hi'si*, red) was almost identical with the word meaning "basket." The literal translation is "red wood," as indicated, but they said it meant "round wood," probably referring to the shape of an insignia of the society which may have been painted red. They said that "two kinds of weapons (insignia) were used in the society, one being flat and the other round. Both were made

[90] Maximilian, op. cit., pp. 291–295, 371.
[91] Lowie, op. cit., p. 221.
[92] The native names of these societies are on pages XIX–XX.

of wood. The flat ones were trimmed with raven feathers and sometimes with white feathers. The round ones had feathers in the middle. The round ones were made in one piece, a knot or lump on the wood being worked into a round end and the rest of the wood forming the handle." The translation "Lumpwood," being commonly used, is continued in the present work.

Good Bear said that the Fox Society, which precedes the Lumpwood in the serial order, was named for "a small animal, not much larger than a cat, with a black tip at the end of its tail." He said "these foxes were spry and quick, these being qualities greatly desired by the young men. They watch in ambush and jump on their prey when it is at the right distance." Societies named for the kit fox are common to many tribes of Indians. A similar society existed among the Mandan, but the principal informants on this subject were Hidatsa, the following singers belonging to the Fox Society: Holding Eagle (pl. 18, *b*), Old Dog, Good Bear, and Harry Eaton. They said the society was still in existence, as the last members had never sold their membership. Interesting information on this subject was also given by Sitting Crow (pl. 18, *a*). Young men joined the society when about 21 years of age. The headdress worn by members of this society consisted of a row of fox jaws, sometimes painted red, yellow, or green, and the men who had "coup feathers" wore them erect at the back of the head. The meetings were held by special appointment, when food was abundant. They did not steal the food for their feast, as the Stone Hammers did. The society was chiefly social in character, and there were no leaders except the men who carried lances. These lances were wrapped with strips of otter fur, placed around the staff of the lance. Pan said that in war a man who placed one of these lances upright in the ground could not retreat from the spot, but if a friend saw that the man would surely be killed he could seize the lance and carry it to a place of safety, the lance owner following without disgrace. Sometimes a lance owner gave his lance to a girl who sang in the scalp songs and made another for himself. If one of the lance bearers were killed in war the society elected another in his place. The lance was used in touching an enemy to "count coup" and also in stabbing an enemy. When the society paraded around the village these lance bearers were preceded by a man who was specially distinguished for bravery. The men always "went on a trot" and they selected from among the spectators a particularly brave man to go at the end of the procession. After completing the circuit of the village they went to the feast in their lodge.

An Hidatsa in explaining the meaning of the term "crazy dog" as applied to the society in his tribe, said it meant that the men were

like dogs in their determination to accomplish their purpose. It was as though they were, for the time, possessed of the spirit of dogs. The purpose of the "Crazy Dogs" was said to be the protection of the women and children in time of war and loyalty of its members to one another when in battle, its members being required to rescue a comrade, though it were at the risk of their own lives.

The mark of membership in the "Half-shaved-heads" was the cutting of the hair short on both sides of the head, leaving a stiff, erect crest of hair extending from the forehead to the nape of the neck.

The first age-society of the Mandan was called So'lita, meaning White. Wounded Face said that he was at a loss to explain this name, as the native term was used only to designate a color. He belonged to the society when a boy and never sold his membership, the society passing out of existence because of changes in the life of the tribe. The boys were not trained in stealth, as were the boys of the Stone Hammer Society among the Hidatsa. The Fox Society is common to many tribes of the plains, the term usually referring to the kit fox. It was said that the Young Dog, Foolish (or Crazy) Dog, and Dog Societies were "all the same organization." The significance and purpose of the society was undoubtedly the same as among the Hidatsa. The origin and character of the Black Mouth Society, as well as a legend concerning the origin of the Buffalo Society, have already been noted (pp. 47, 84–85). The distinction between dances of the Buffalo Society and the "Buffalo medicine dance" is mentioned on page 36. Wounded Face said that members of the Coarse Hair Society wore a headdress of buffalo hair, which was twisted together, making long strands that hung down before their faces.

Bear-on-the-flat related certain experiences which are of interest in connection with admission to the boy's societies. He said that when he and a few other boys were too young to join the Fox Society they wanted to "hang around" at the time of the meetings, but the Fox Society would not let them. So they voluntarily carried wood and water for the Young Dog Society whenever they had a meeting. This was appreciated and the little boys were allowed to sit in the dusky edge of the lodge during the meetings of the Young Dog Society. In this manner the boys learned many songs, and as soon as they were old enough they joined the Young Dog Society. He said that a boy, when joining this society, was said to "purchase the songs" from an old man of the same clan whom he called his "father." The boy was required to spend a certain number of evenings with the old man, rehearsing the songs which he sang at the first meeting he attended. The songs transmitted in this manner

were not original compositions, like the "dream songs" of the Chippewa and Sioux medicine men, but were old songs that had been handed down for many generations in the society. The full number of rehearsals was 40 or 50, but some could be deducted in return for each valuable present given the old man. It was required that the boy give him food every night that they were singing together. During this time the boy addressed the old man as "father," and this continued until the songs were sung at the society.

Bear-on-the-flat said that the meetings of the society were held in the afternoon and that the members required the entire morning for preparation. They cut the hair short on one side of the head, tied a black cloth around the head, and stuck a feather upright in this band. Long strings of beads were hung at either side of their faces. The gayest raiment was worn and both men and horses were painted, the latter being decorated according to the owner's fancy. The men wore a whistle suspended around the neck, blowing on it occasionally, and they usually carried a gun or a bow and arrows. The procession of the society that preceded their meeting was led by two men with rattles and behind them walked two men carrying long staves, one of which was wound with otter fur and one with wolf fur. These were followed by members of the society, either on horseback or walking two by two. The rattles were shaken vigorously and the men "trotted" on their way around the village circle. Sometimes the procession paused in front of a lodge and the men danced until gifts were brought out and distributed. These were various articles and not gifts of food, as a feast awaited the members of the society in their lodge. At this meeting the "fathers" presented their respective "sons" with elaborate garments, often including red cloth for a suit that cost 10 buffalo robes at the trader's store. If the young men were married, their wives received similar gifts. This was an occasion of much rivalry, the spectators being curious to see which boy had chosen the best "father." The boy also contributed gifts that were distributed at the feast. Many dancing songs were used in the lodge, and after any of them a warrior might rise, go forward, and strike the drum as a signal that he wished to relate one of his deeds of valor. This was said to "give the singers and drummers a chance to rest." The rattle and whistle used in this society are noted on pages 8 and 9. See also plate 19, *b*.

Bear-on-the-flat said that if the enemy were believed to be ready to attack the village, so that a battle might be expected on the morrow, it was customary for the Crazy Dogs to go around the village late in the afternoon singing their war songs, while at a distance the old men sat together singing their personal songs to encourage the young warriors.

The Black Mouth Society comprised warriors who were in the prime of life, having passed the age of reckless daring but lost none of their vigor (see pp. 47–52). Maximilian calls the fourth age society of the Mandan the "Soldiers," but his description of the face painting and other customs identify it as the Black Mouth Society. The Buffalo Society was composed of men 50 to 60 years of age. Little Crow said that the society held its principal meeting in the spring, "when the grass was just starting." In this dance the men reenacted their exploits on the warpath. Spectators were not allowed to approach the dancers; and if they did so, the warriors "fired a blank charge at them." It was said that members of the Buffalo Society went to war, if necessary, but they do not seem to have been part of the active and constant defense of the tribe. Holding Eagle said that "two men represented buffalo and wore headdresses with horns. The members of the society wore buffalo-hide decorations, but did not wear a whole headdress of it." Crow's Heart was one of those who were privileged to wear the headdress representing a buffalo (pl. 19, *a*). None of the songs of this society were designated as war songs.

Drums, Rattles, and Whistles Used in the Societies

The drums used in the several societies were hand drums and usually were of medium size (pl. 9, *a*, *b*). There were said to be three or four drums in each society, a certain responsibility resting with the head drummer, as he was expected to open his own lodge at any time for meetings of the society.

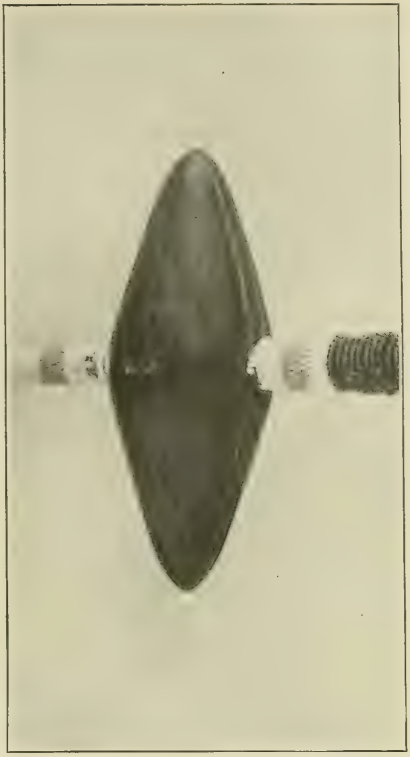
The rattles were of two types (see p. 8). Each society had its own sort of rattle which was used in the dances.

Whistles or "war pipes" of different sizes were used by the societies (see p. 9). The specimens and descriptions obtained by the present writer differed in no essential respects from those recorded by Maximilian.

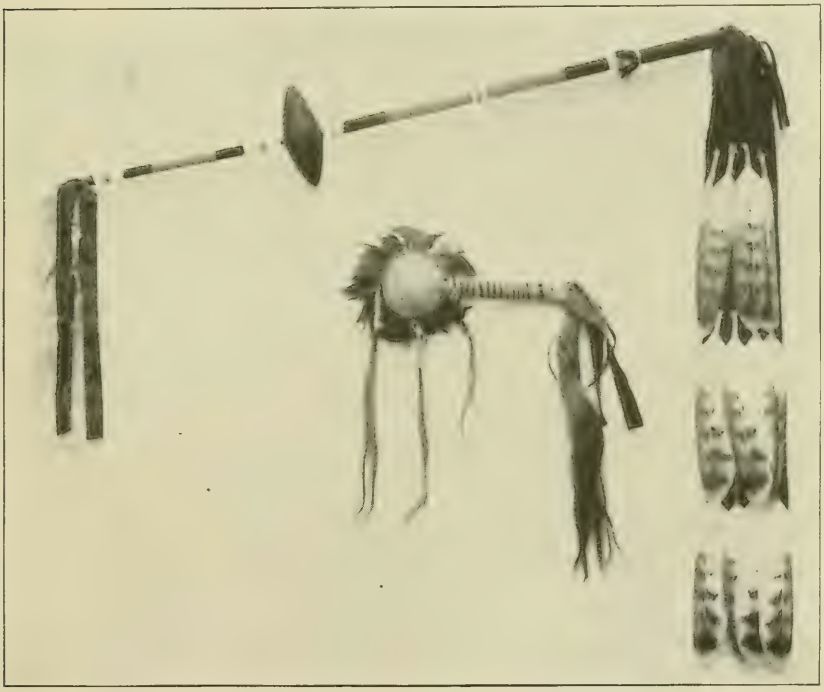
Songs of the Societies

These songs are of three general classes: (1) Dancing songs, (2) war songs, and (3) "serenades," the latter being sung by members of the society when going around the village or sitting on top of the lodges. To these may be added the love songs, which differed from the serenades, but were sung in a somewhat similar manner. Songs were always referred to a certain society, the title being given as a "Fox Society war song," or a "Dog Society serenade." Some of the following songs were undoubtedly Mandan and others Hidatsa in origin; but as the societies, with one exception, were common to both tribes, it is not expedient to attempt a tribal grouping of the songs,

a. Headdress worn in Buffalo Society



c. Head of Stone Hammer Society wand



b. Stone Hammer Society wand and Foolish Dog Society rattle

beyond the presentation of the Hidatsa Stone Hammer Society in a separate section. This society, as already stated, was not found among the Mandan.

In many instances Hidatsa words were sung to an old melody because they were easier to sing and were more generally understood. Thus the language of the words does not always indicate the tribal origin of a song.

Stone Hammer Society of the Hidatsa

This society consisted of boys between the ages of 10 and 16 years, though one informant stated that he remembered a boy of 7 who belonged to the society, and that boys sometimes remained in it until they were 18 years old. Membership in the society was purchased by a boy from a man of the same clan called his "clan father." This man gave the boy his entire equipment, comprising clothing, ornaments, and insignia of the society. The boys gave valuable gifts in return for these and also contributed to a pile of presents that were distributed at his initiation.

The Hidatsa word for societies in general is *bû'dawani'di*. As among other tribes this is not included in the name of an organization, which is known simply by its title. Thus the Hidatsa term for the Stone Hammer Society is *Mi'i maü'paki* (*mi'i*, stone, *maü'paki*, mallet), referring to an implement for pounding meat or crushing bones.

The chief purpose of the society was to train the boys in stealth and theft, but there were strict regulations concerning the manner in which this was done. Full notification must be given several hours before the Stone Hammers began a raid. If a member of the society committed a theft at any other time than that appointed and was discovered he was treated as a common thief. His membership in the society was no protection, and the society repudiated the act. He was also given some severe form of punishment.

The Stone Hammer raids took place at night, and it was required that before sunset the boys go through the camp announcing that they would steal that night. Everyone was fully notified and proceeded to hide their provisions in what they considered the safest places. That evening the boys assembled in their society lodge. They stripped to the breechcloth and daubed the back or chest with moist clay. When this was partly dry, they traced with a finger nail the figure of a mouse or rat, leaving the brown skin within the outline. Other designs in paint could be put on the body, all such decorations being in accordance with instructions given each boy by his clan father. The boy's hair was all brought upward and to

one side of the front of his head where it was tied in a bunch, and to this were fastened feathers or bags of medicine, as directed by the clan father, all these preparations being as nearly as possible like those of warriors. A Stone Hammer raid was regarded seriously and as tending to develop the qualities which would later be needed on the warpath.

The boys took their seats in the lodge according to the place which their clan occupied in the tribal circle, some at the right, others at the left, of the entrance. The door of the lodge was tightly closed and only members were allowed to enter. Every boy in the village belonged to the society if he were within the age limits, but it was recognized that some were more efficient than others. The first act of the society was to select the boys who were to steal. A boy might decline, saying that he did not wish to try it. The selection seems to have been by a general nomination, some one saying, "Let so-and-so go, he is a smart boy." The boys, when selected, sat in the middle of the circle. Frequently they were four to eight in number. A boy was then appointed to "ask the questions." He began with the boy next the door and asked him what his mother had in the house that was good to eat, and where she kept it. The boys in the middle of the lodge listened carefully to these replies. The same questions were asked of every boy in the circle and each was expected to be posted and to reply correctly. The boys in the middle of the lodge were then questioned and at last the boy who had questioned the others was himself questioned as to where his mother, or aunt, or grandmother hid her best food.

This being finished, the stealing boys were divided into two groups according to the side of the circle where their band was located, as they were required to steal from the tents on the opposite side of the circle, with which they naturally were less familiar than with their own. They went out in pairs and with each group there were two extra boys who stayed outside the tents and who gave the alarm if necessary by a sharp repeated exhalation of the breath, given without forming any syllable, or by a low whistle. A favorite place for hiding food was under the pillow or under the pallet on which an old woman slept. Mr. Packineau stated that it was not unusual for the Stone Hammer boys to lift the blanket on which an old woman was sleeping, lay the blanket and the old woman gently to one side, and take the dried meat or other food from beneath her bed without waking her. Thus in the morning people often found themselves sleeping in another part of the tent than that in which they had retired, and the food was gone. Occasionally the boys were badly treated. Sometimes the men threw them on the ground, rubbed or punched the stomach in a painful manner, and

sent them away, or perhaps tied them up and demanded a ransom. Upon such men the Stone Hammer Society took its revenge in its own way. If the boys were badly treated, but obtained the food, they did not give the usual presents to the people from whom the food was stolen.

After a successful raid the food was taken to the lodge and the boys had a feast. Blankets and other goods were obtained from their parents, and either that night or the night next following the boys made up packs of gifts equivalent in value to what they had stolen. These they gave to the people whom they had robbed, and it was considered that everything was properly adjusted.

STONE HAMMER SOCIETY WAND

Every society had its insignia in the form of a wand, staff, lance, or other object which was carried by members in the dance or in war. These were called *wídawa'he*. In designating the insignia of a particular society the name of the society preceded this term. Thus the Stone Hammer Society wand was called *Mi'i maü' paki*, stone hammers, *i'ta*, their, *wídawa'he*, wand. This was in the form of a mallet comprising a stone head pointed at both ends and pierced through the middle, a handle about 25 inches long being passed through the hole in the stone and securely fastened. The stone head was decorated in various designs. The specimen illustrated (pl. 19, *b*, *c*) was made for the writer by Pan (pl. 14, *c*) and is of the type commonly carried in the society. A more elaborate wand was "carried by those who could afford it," and differed from the form illustrated in that it had three long slender points beyond the stone head, and to these were hung feathers, preferably those of the eagle. The wand was carried in the dances, held at arm's length and waved above the dancer's head. The handle must be of cherry or June-berry wood and around the handle was usually a band of otter fur. The hawk was "the bird of the society," and the specimen illustrated is decorated with the entire tail feathers of a white-tailed hawk. Eagle feathers could be used if desired. The stone head was colored according to the taste of its maker, the colors being red, black, white, green, and blue. A black glazed surface on the stone was secured by thoroughly greasing the stone and then wrapping it with grass which was burned off slowly. One side of the specimen illustrated was blackened in this manner, the other side being painted with native vermilion. On the black side of the stone is graven a representation of the moon (pl. 19, *c*) and on the red side is the morning star. Other symbols which were placed on the stones were the north star (*Ikahaga'ta*, meaning "star that does not move"), the

Pleiades (*ikaäho'a*), the "hand stars" (*skawaro'saki*), referring to a group of stars resembling an outspread hand which is seen in the south in winter and which "moves around the north star."

The wand was made for an initiate by the old man of his clan whom he selected to present him for membership. The selection of the design on the stone head of his wand might be determined in several ways. If the boy had had a dream and seen a dream symbol, he told it to his "clan father," who placed it on the stone. If the boy had not had a vision, the responsibility for the design rested with his "clan father" If he did not wish to choose it himself he called together some old men of the same clan and consulted them as to what design would "give the boy a good start in life" by placing him under protection of strong and favorable elements. When a design was chosen by the old men for a boy who had not had a vision, it was expected that the boy would seek a vision immediately afterwards and would try to obtain a dream of the symbol that had been placed on his wand. The fasting vigil for securing the dream could be of any duration, but one night was sometimes sufficient, and the result was considered as satisfactory as though a longer time were required.

An old man did not allow anyone in the lodge when he was making one of these wands. He filled a pipe and presented the stem to the south, west, north, and east, then to the zenith and the earth. Some presented it to the zenith before presenting it to the cardinal points, but it was always offered last to the earth. As the old man performed each of these acts he made a supplication similar to the following: "*Ma'ĥopaïk'ti'a* (great medicine),[93] smoke this pipe. I want success for this young man." After which he mentioned in his petition the respects in which success was especially desired for the candidate.

A clan father was rewarded for making the wand by liberal gifts, often including a horse. Henceforth he took great interest in the lad and considered that the young man's successes were a source of rightful pride to himself, believing he had contributed to the securing of the supernatural help without which the young man could not have succeeded in life.

STONE HAMMER SOCIETY SONGS

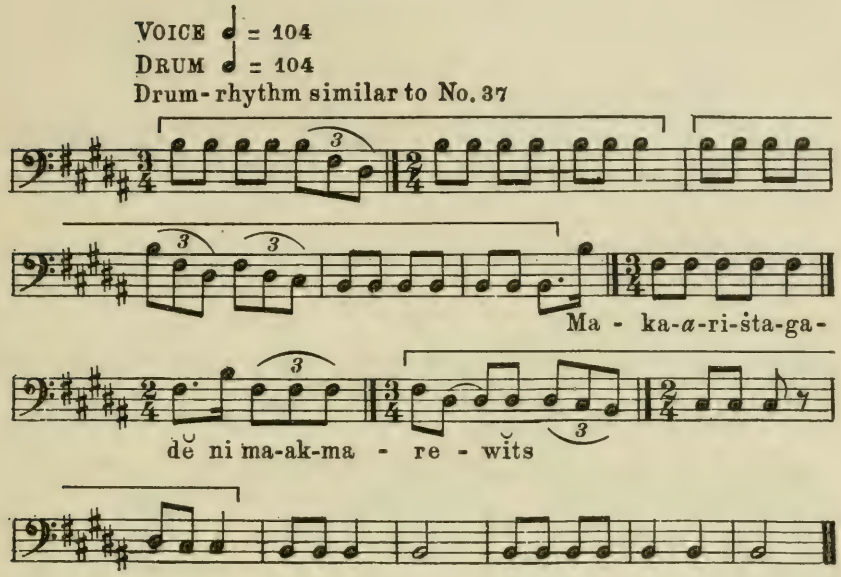
The two songs next following are serenades of the Stone Hammer Society.

---

[93] See p. 36.

No. 47. "I Desire To Take You With Me" (Catalogue No. 884)

Recorded by PAN



WORDS (HIDATSA)

ma'kari'stagadĕ'_____little ones
ni_____you
mak'mare'wits_____I desire to take with me

Analysis.—The melodic material of this song is scanty, comprising only the major triad and second, and the chief interest of the song is in its rhythm. This is given with most clearness in the third rendition, from which the transcription is made. Comparison of the three occurrences of the rhythmic unit shows the addition of a triplet in the second occurrence, and a syncopation and an eighth rest in the third occurrence. These are slight changes, but were given with distinctness and add to the interest of the song.

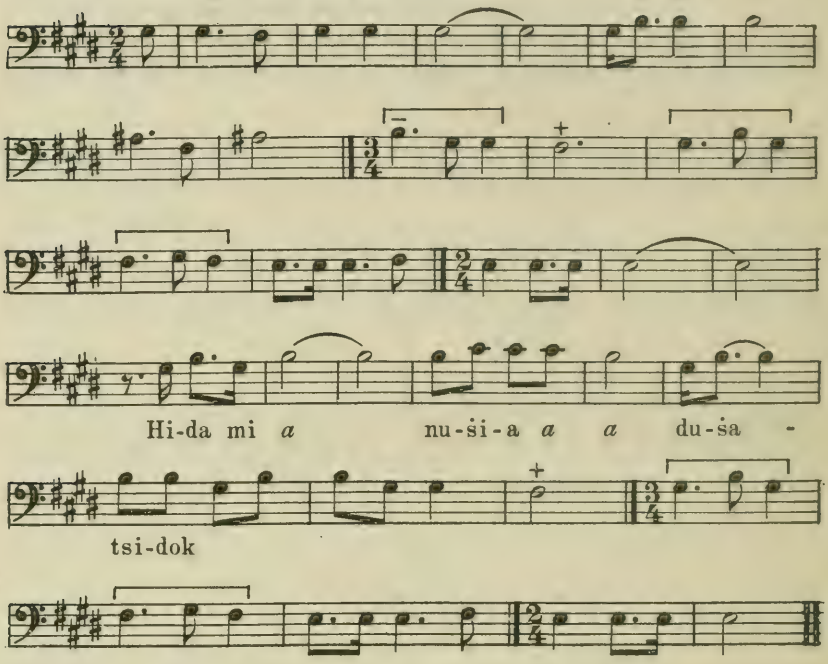
No. 48. "Let Us Go" (Catalogue No. 885)

Recorded by PAN

VOICE ♩ = 120

DRUM ♩ = 120

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



WORDS (HIDATSA)

hi'da
mi
nu'ṡiä
duṡa'tsidok

(Free translation)
Why should you come again?
Let us go now

Analysis.—In analyzing this song we must consider that it was recorded by a singer whose time and intonation are variable. The several renditions of the song differ more than is usually the case, yet the relative lengths of the tones which compose the rhythmic unit are clearly maintained. All the tones of the octave are present except the sixth and seventh. The fourth is sharped in the seventh and eighth measures, and the first tone of the ninth measure was sung slightly below pitch. Thirty-nine progressions occur, only three of which are larger than a minor third.

This song evidently refers to the youth of the organization and their exploits. It is said to have been the last song of the Stone Hammer Society.

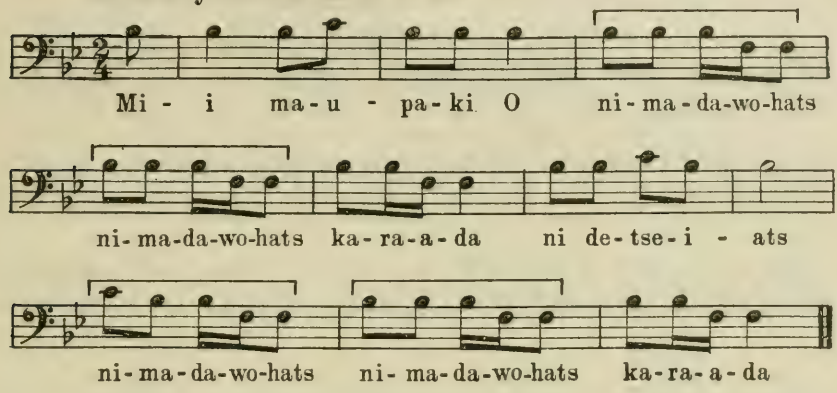
No. 49. "Run Away" (Catalogue No. 886)

Recorded by PAN

VOICE ♩ = 80

DRUM ♩ = 80

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



WORDS (HIDATSA)

Mi'i maü'paki	Stone Hammers
O	O
ni'madawo'hats	you are youngsters
kara'ada	run away
ni	you
detše'iäts	will be exterminated
ni'madawo'hats	you are youngsters
kara'ada	run away

Analysis.—This melody is particularly expressive of the idea contained in the words. Sixty-five per cent of the intervals are fourths, this interval being prominent in songs concerning motion. There is a taunting effect in the repetitions of the descending fourth as well as in the rhythm of the rhythmic unit (cf. Nos. 93 and 107). Considering B flat as the keynote, we observe that the third is absent from the melody, the only tones being B flat, C, and F.

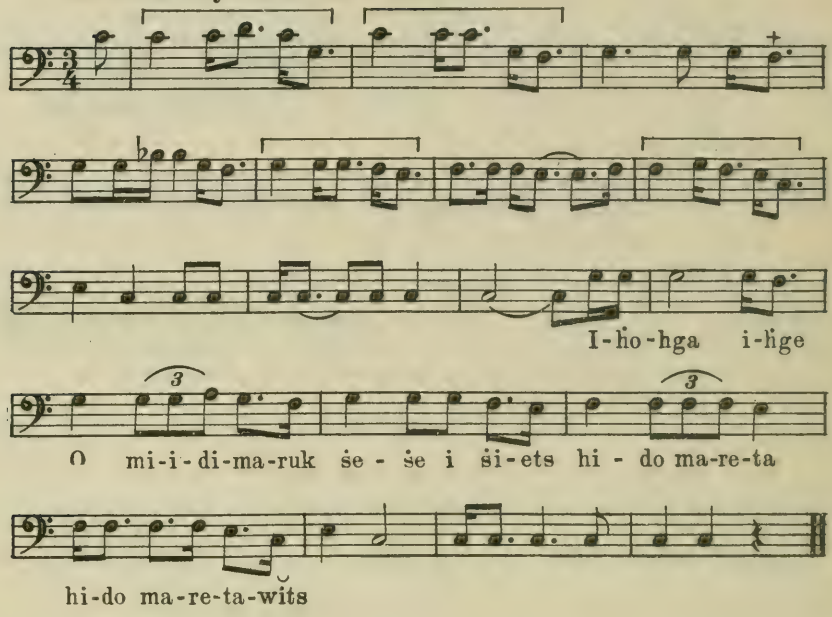
No. 50. "I Want to Live" (Catalogue No. 887)

Recorded by PAN

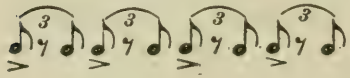
VOICE ♩ = 63

DRUM ♩ = 63

See drum-rhythm below



Drum-rhythm (approximate)



WORDS (HIDATSA)

I'ĥc ĥga i'ĥge	Fox band
O	O
mi'idima'ruk	I want to live
še'še	that
iši'ets	is bad
hi'do	from here
mare'tawĭts [94]	I will not depart

Analysis.—As in other records by this singer, the intonation is variable, but the rhythmic unit is given clearly in each of the three

[94] In one instance the final syllable of this word was omitted by the singer.

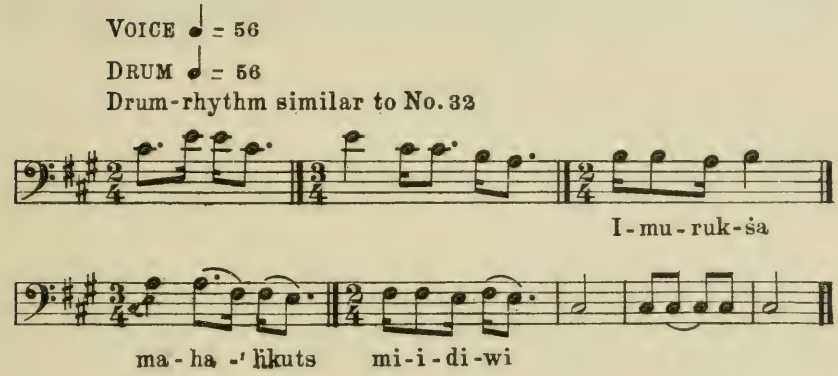
renditions. The melody contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth. Almost three-fourths of the intervals are whole tones and semitones, the melody progressing by unusually small degrees.

Fox Society Songs

The words of this song express the dignity and valor of the warrior. Another war song of the Fox Society is included among the war songs as No. 96. Good Bear, who recorded this song and song No. 110, was a highly respected member of the Hidatsa tribe and for many years was judge in the agency court of Indian offenses.

No. 51. "Need I Be Afraid" (Catalogue No. 899)

Recorded by Good Bear



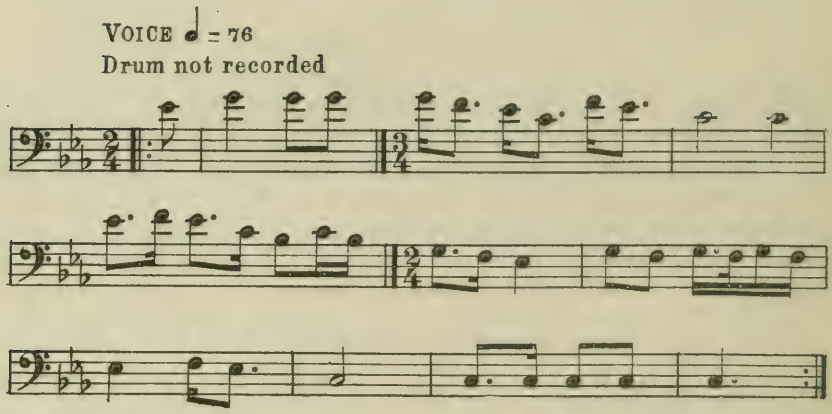
WORDS (HIDATSA)

i'muruk'sa_____I am simply on the earth
maha'likuts mi'idi'wi_____need I be afraid?

Analysis.—The only intervals occurring in this song are minor thirds and major seconds, yet the melody has a compass of 10 tones. Two-thirds of the progressions are downward. In structure the song is melodic and the tempo is unusually slow, a characteristic noted in several of the war songs (cf., among others, Nos. 78, 80, 86, 87, 91, 92, 95, 97, 98). The melody tones are those of the fourth five-toned scale.

No. 52. Fox Society War Song (a) (Catalogue No. 895)

Recorded by WOLF HEAD

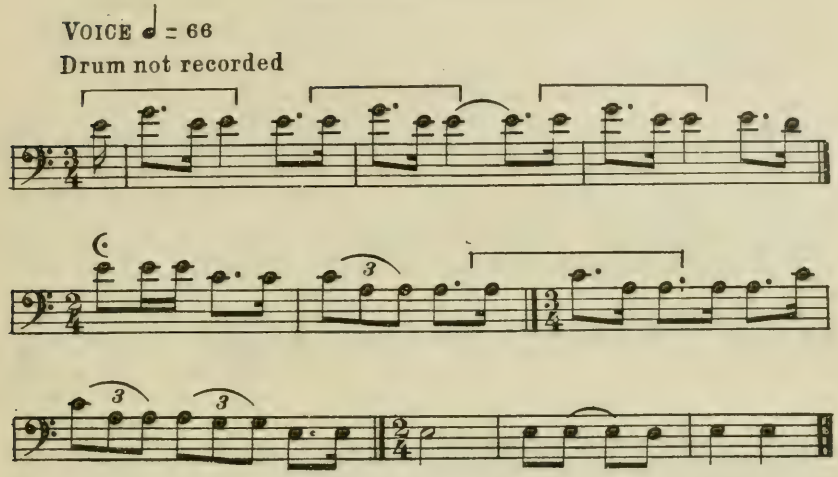


Analysis.—This song contains only one interval larger than a major third. It is minor in tonality and contains all the tones of the octave except the second. There was no break in the time between the renditions. The song is not rhythmic in general character and contains no rhythmic unit.

Old Dog said that the following song was sung by members of the Fox Society when one of their number had been killed in battle, also stating that the same song was sung if a man were wounded while on the warpath and died after reaching home. He said they all "went and looked at him," then stood in a line and sang the song. They mixed tobacco and "red willow" and gave it to the dead man, who was arrayed in his finest clothing and headdress. The body was then wrapped and placed on a scaffold. The warrior's lance, on which was the fetish given him by his "tribal father," was transferred to another man. Old Dog said that he had seen and taken part in this simple ceremony six times, the last time being in 1880, when a war party of his people went toward the north, probably against the Crees and Chippewa.

No. 53. Fox Society Funeral Song (Catalogue No. 890)

Recorded by OLD DOG



WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

mu'daku'a_____my comrade's (referring to the dead man)
ido'pi_____tobacco
ma'wits[95]_____to smoke
mawa'hĕts_____I desire

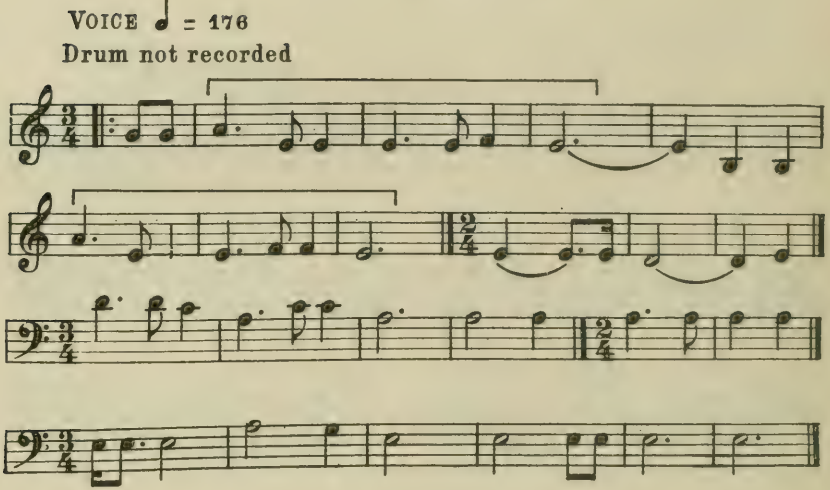
Analysis.—This song contains three rhythmic periods, the first comprising two measures, the second and third each comprising three measures, and the song ending with two unimportant measures. The tempo is slow and the song dignified, though the count divisions of the rhythmic unit suggest a more cheerful theme. The melody tones are those of the fourth five-toned scale, but 11 of the 16 progressions are minor thirds.

Holding Eagle (pl. 18, *b*) said that he was a member of the Fox Society when he was a young man, and went with them against the Sioux. He said that the war party stopped on the bank of a river and sang this song before attacking the Sioux. The words of this song were identical with the words of No. 96, recorded by the same singer, and said to be also a Fox Society war song. They were sung more distinctly with the later melody and are transcribed as part of that song.

[95] This word is also used with the meaning "to drink."

No. 54. Fox Society War Song (b) (Catalogue No. 850)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



Analysis.—There was no break in the time between the renditions of this song, and the indicated measure lengths were maintained throughout the renditions. The keynote is the highest tone in the song and also occurs midway of the compass, the song having a range of 11 tones. The song is rhythmic in character, although the rhythmic unit occurs only in the first portion, being practically a repetition of the opening phrase. The fourth is a prominent interval in the song.

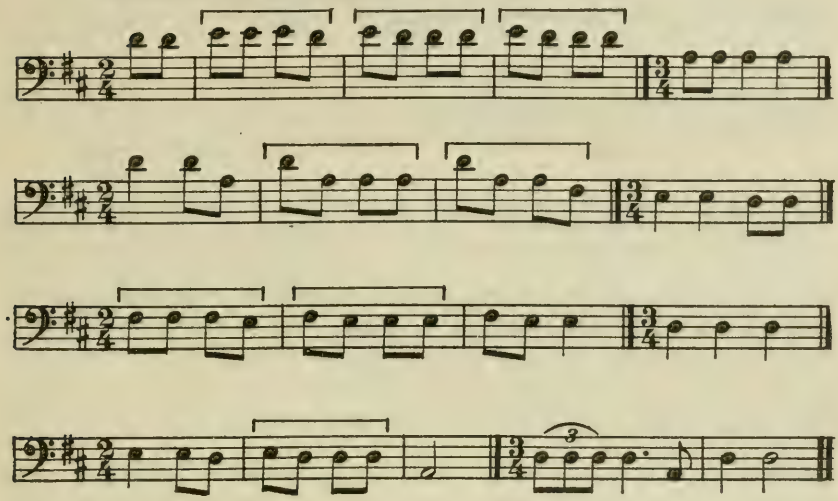
No. 55. Fox Society Serenade (Catalogue No. 871)

Recorded by SITTING RABBIT

VOICE ♩ = 100

DRUM ♩ = 58

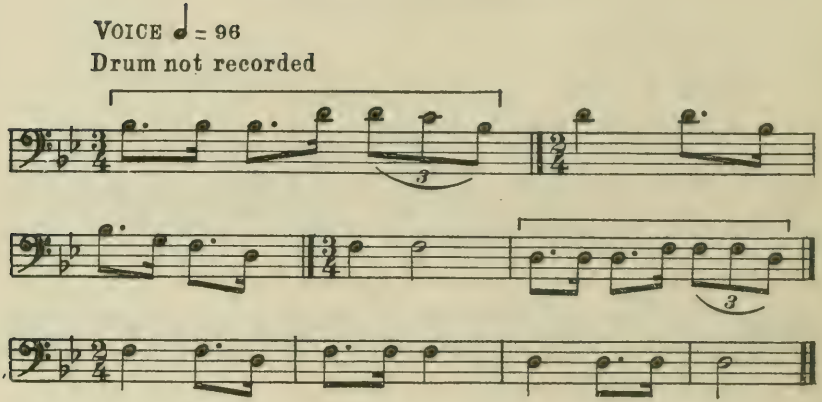
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



Analysis.—The words of this song (not transcribed) were the same as those of No. 58. Duplication of words appears much more frequently in this material than in the songs recorded among other tribes. Several renditions of this song were recorded and show no differences. The intonation was good throughout the series. Except for two intervals of a third, all the progressions are major seconds and fourths, the latter constituting almost one-third of the entire number. The final tone is approached by an ascending fourth, which is unusual in the present series. In tonality the song is major, the melody tones being those of the major triad and second.

No. 56. Fox Society Song (Catalogue No. 867)

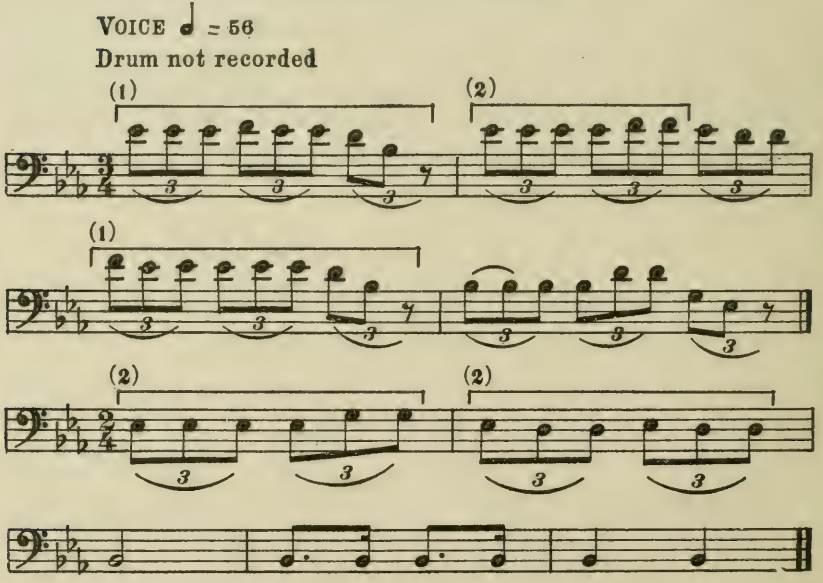
Recorded by SITTING RABBIT



Analysis.—Major and minor thirds constitute four-fifths of the intervals in this song, which is harmonic in structure. Six renditions were recorded and show some points of difference. The first rendition was wavering in intonation. The transcription is from the second, which was identical with the fourth rendition.

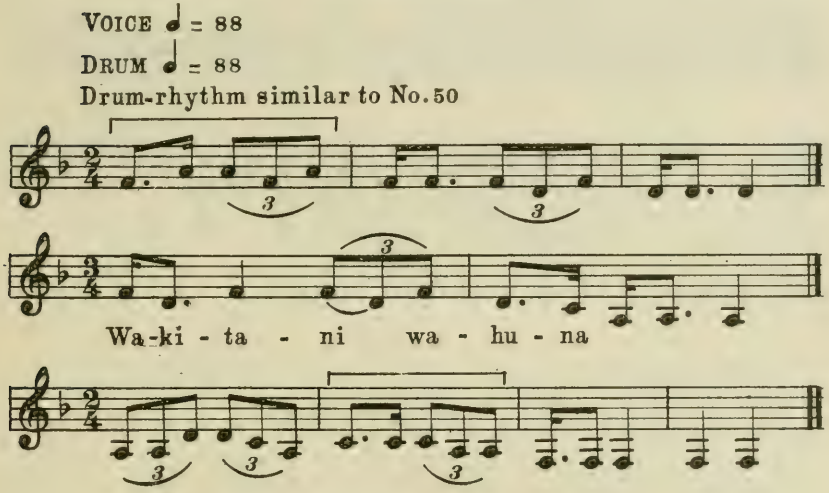
Sitting Rabbit stated that the following song was "sung on top of a lodge or sometimes down on the edge of the timber." He said that one man might sing a love song alone, or three or four might sing it together. No words were recorded. (See pl. 19, *b*.)

No. 57. Fox Society Love Song (Catalogue No. 868)

Recorded by SITTING RABBIT

Analysis.—This song contains two rhythmic units, the second being a partial repetition of the first. It is interesting to note the prolonged tone at the opening of the fourth measure, a variation which gives character to the rhythm of the entire song. Only two of the intervals are larger than a major third. Almost one-third of the progressions are semitones, which is unusual in the Indian songs analyzed according to the present method.

No. 58. "Wake Up" (Catalogue No. 835)

Recorded by BENSON



WORDS (MANDAN)

waki'tani_____wake up
wahu'na_____come on

Analysis.—The words of this song were used also in a Fox Society serenade (No. 55), but were not transcribed in that instance. It will be noted that the two melodies have no resemblance to each other. A dotted eighth and a triplet of eighth notes characterize the ryhthm of this song, occurring in various combinations. The song is short and has a compass of 10 tones, yet the progressions, with three exceptions, are major and minor thirds. In structure the song is harmonic; the tone material comprises the major triad and second.

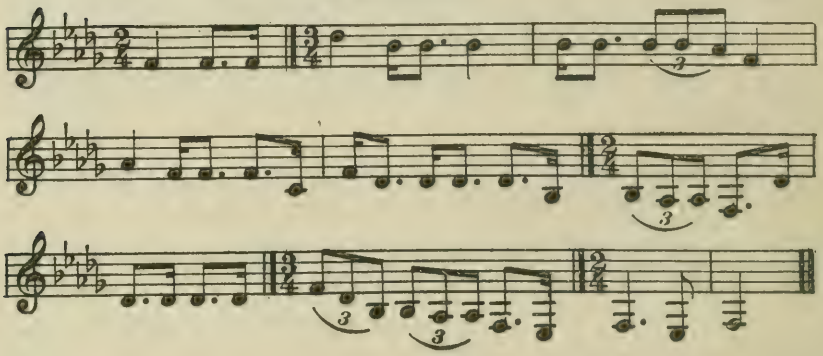
No. 59. "Why Did You Sleep?" (Catalogue No. 836)

Recorded by BENSON

VOICE ♩ = 80

DRUM ♩ = 80

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 50



(WORDS HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

(Free translation)

maha'kuwaneši'_____no one expects to live long
ni'hawidok_____are you asleep?
maro'hawak_____I am tired out

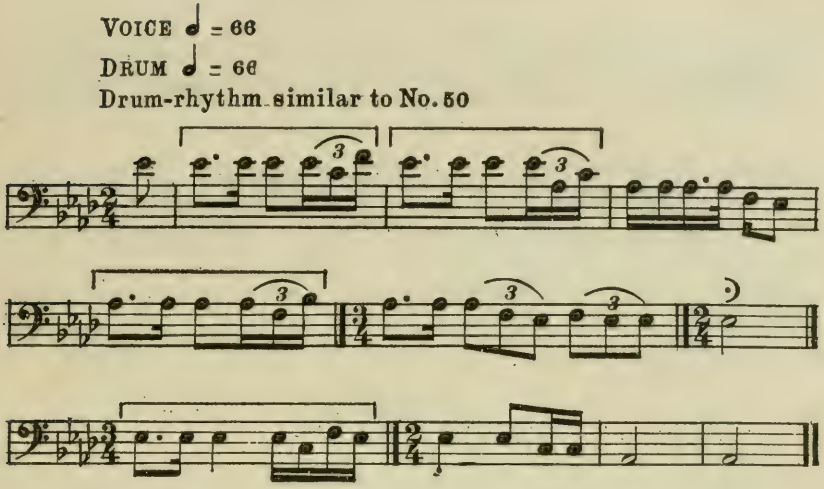
Analysis.—This song has a compass of 14 tones and was sung with great vibrato. In structure it is harmonic, and in tone material it lacks the second and fourth tones of the octave. It is major in tonality but more than one-third of the intervals are minor thirds. The ascending minor sixth with which the song begins is unusual and is repeated in the lower octave. Like No. 58, the drum-rhythm is in a triple division, with an unaccented beat on (approximately) the third part of the triplet.

Young Dog Society Song

No. 60. Young Dog Society Serenade

(Catalogue No. 870)

Recorded by Sitting Rabbit



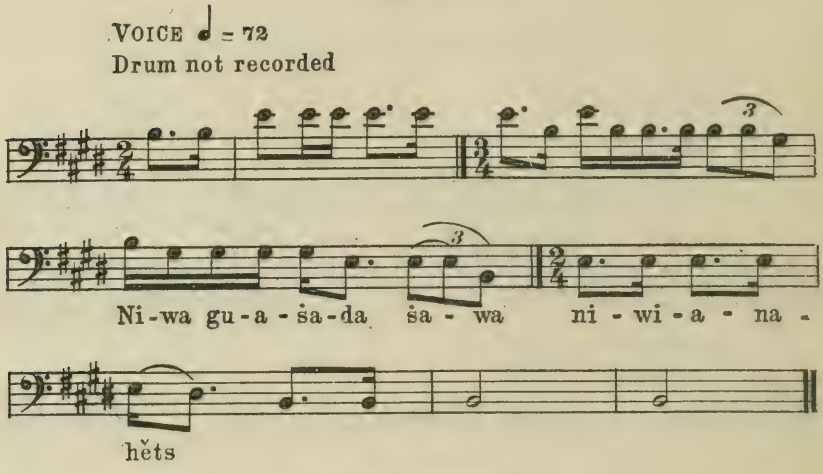
Analysis.—More than two-thirds of the intervals in this song are descending progressions, the song containing only 10 measures and having a compass of 13 tones. The minor triad is prominent in the descending, and the fourth in the ascending intervals. The song is major in tonality and contains all the tones of the octave except the seventh.

Foolish (or Crazy) Dog Society Songs

The four songs next following were said to belong to the Foolish Dog Society. All these are of the class known as "serenades." It is interesting to note that no war songs are in this group.

No. 61. "You Did It" (Catalogue No. 843)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



WORDS (HIDATSA)

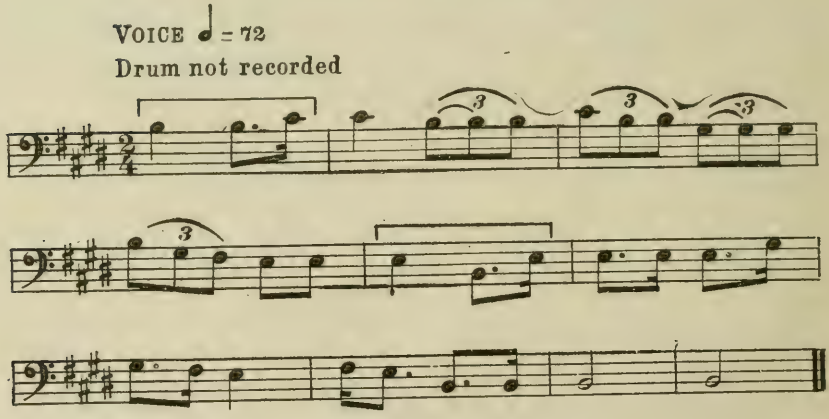
ni'wa——you
gu'aśada——did it
hĕ'śawa [96]——therefore
ni'wiä wahĕts'——you wept

Analysis.—This song contains only the tones of the major triad, except that the seventh appears near the close. The interval of a fourth characterizes the song both in ascending and in descending progression. In structure the song is harmonic, with a compass of 11 tones.

No. 62. Foolish Dog Society Serenade

(Catalogue No. 844)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



[96] The first syllable of this word was omitted by the singer.

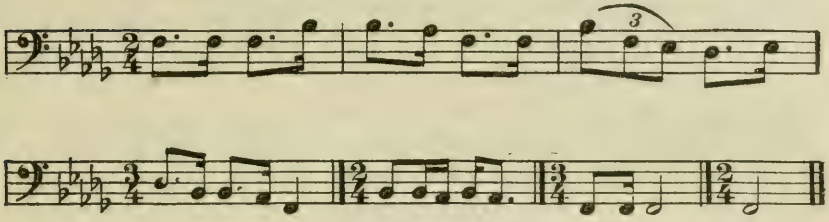
Analysis.—More than half the progressions in this song are whole tones. A major third occurs only once, though the song is based upon the fourth five-toned scale, which is major in tonality. In rhythmic structure the song contains two periods of about equal length, each beginning with the same rhythm and each having a descending trend. The keynote is midway the compass of the song, which begins on the dominant above and ends on the dominant below the keynote.

The following song was recorded in 1912 by Little Crow and his wife, Otter Woman. In each rendition he began the song and she joined after two or three measures, her voice being an octave above his. Two similar renditions by a Sioux and his wife are transcribed in full (Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 478, 480). Little Crow died in 1913, and when the writer returned in 1915 his wife recorded the songs of sadness, Nos. 14 and 15 of this series. The words of this song express the feelings of those who were obliged to listen to the evening serenades of the young men.

No. 63. "I Cannot Sleep" (Catalogue No. 905)

Recorded by LITTLE CROW AND WIFE

VOICE ♩ - 84
Drum not recorded



WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

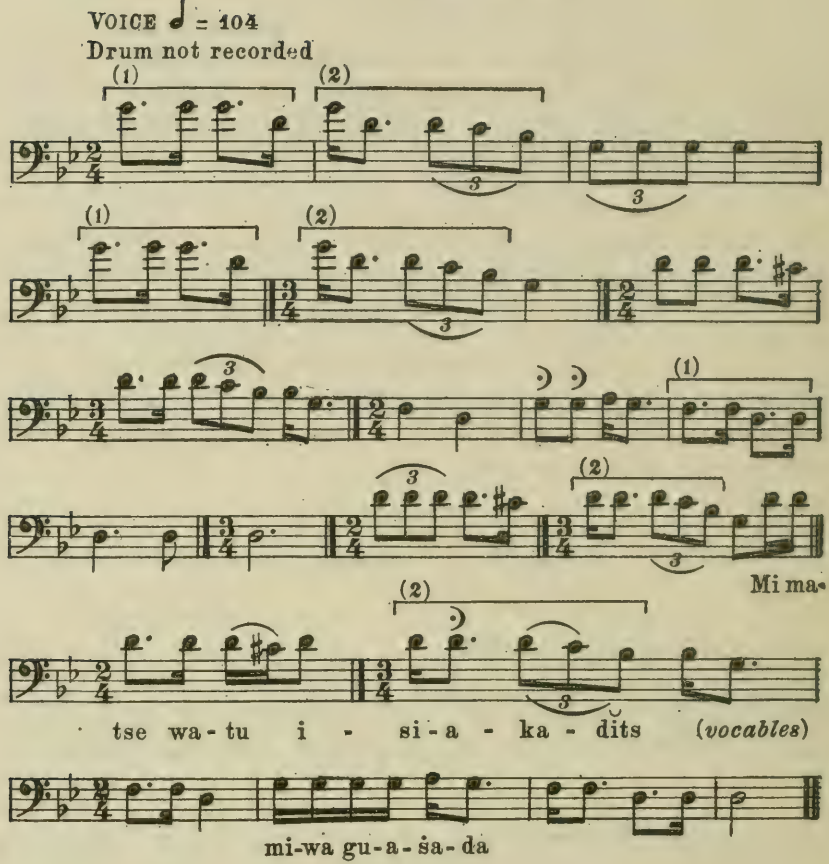
no----------O
hi'dawika----------to sleep
maki'ruk----------to lie
madiĕts'iruš----------I think if
miha'witaïts----------but I can not sleep

(Free translation: "I think if I only could lie down and sleep, but I cannot sleep.")

Analysis.—This song is on the second five-toned scale, which appears only five times in the present series (see p. 19). In rhythmic structure the song comprises three periods, the first and second containing two measures each and the third containing three measures. The change to triple time in the fourth measure adds to the interest of the melody. The principal interval of progression is a whole tone.

No. 64. "It is My Own Fault" (Catalogue No. 909).

Recorded by JAMES DRIVER



WORDS (HIDATSA)

mi	I
matse'	a man (have),
watu'wa [97]	as it is,
isi'aka'dĭts	who is bad (or unkind)
mi'wa	I myself
gu'aṡada	did it

[97] The last syllable of this word was omitted by the singer.

Analysis.—Two rhythmic units occur in this song, which is unusually interesting in rhythmic form. The first period of the melody comprises six counts divided into three measures; the second period comprises five counts divided into two measures; the third period comprises three measures, the second of which is in triple time; and the fourth period contains four measures, ending the first portion of the song. The opening measure of the second portion contains an exact reversal of the count divisions of the second rhythmic unit, which is followed by the second unit in its original form. This portion of the song comprises three periods containing, respectively, two, three, and three measures. Forty-five progressions occur in the song, a majority of which contain three or four semitones, being major seconds or minor thirds. The song is minor in tonality, has a compass of 11 tones, and contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth.

Dog Society Songs

This group comprises four songs, Nos. 65 and 68 being war songs and Nos. 66 and 67 being serenades. No. 100 is also a war song of this society. No songs of the Young Dog or Foolish Dog Society were said to be used in war, and a comparison of the songs of these three societies indicates the differences in the age and character of their members.

Holding Eagle, who recorded Nos. 65, 66, and 67, said that he learned these songs from his father, who bought them from an older man. As Holding Eagle was a reliable informant and died at the age of about 65 years, the songs evidently are very old. The words of No. 66 refer to the following incident: A young woman was thrown from her horse in battle and called for assistance. A man went to her rescue, defended her at the risk of his life, and found that she was his daughter-in-law.

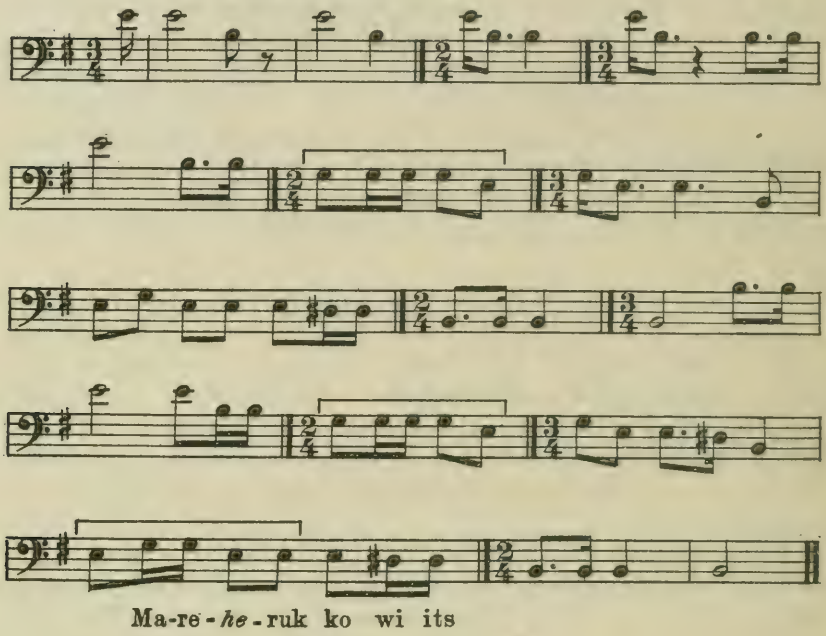
No. 65. "If I go" (Catalogue No. 852)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE

VOICE ♩ = 76

DRUM ♩ = 76

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 32



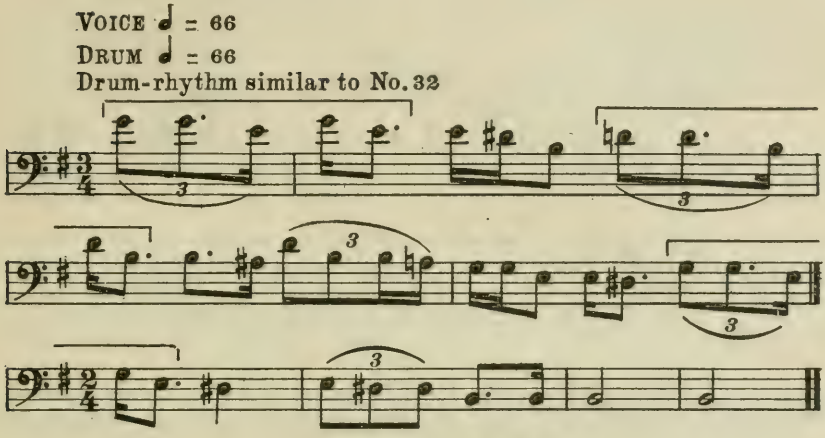
WORDS (HIDATSA)

mare'ruk ..... if I go
kowi'its ..... that is the end (or "I am no more")

Analysis.—This song has the same words as No. 71, a song of the Buffalo Society. A similar duplication of words is noted in the analysis of No. 58. The interval of a fourth comprises almost half the progressions in the present song, occurring an equal number of times in ascending and descending progression. The song is harmonic in structure and the melody tones are those of the minor triad and seventh. Three renditions were recorded, showing slight and unimportant differences. The transcription is from the second rendition.

No. 66. Dog Society Serenade (a) (Catalogue No. 853)

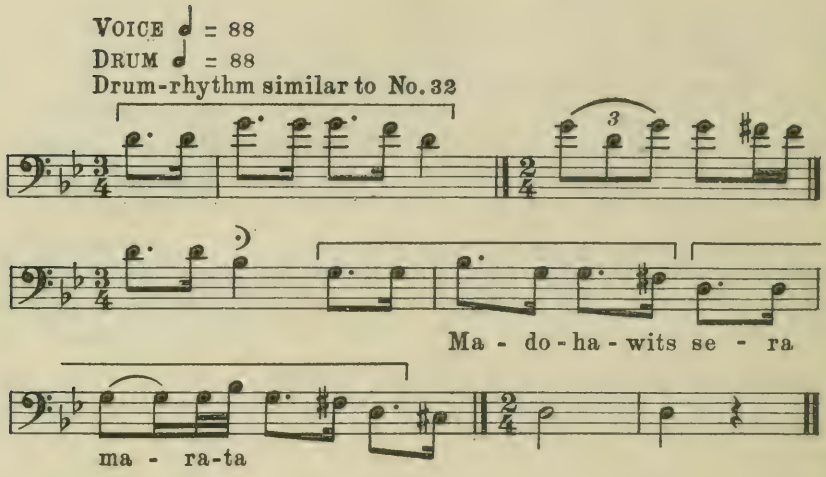
Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



Analysis.—The tone material of this song is peculiar, the second and sixth tones of the octave being lacking and the fourth and seventh repeatedly sharped. The differences of pitch were clearly given in all the renditions, though in instances of this kind it should not be understood that the sharped tones were sung exactly on "piano pitch." A lesser difference in pitch is indicated by the sign + placed above a note. Only seven complete measures occur in this song, but the entire range of 10 tones is included in six measures. The song contains 24 intervals, only two of which are larger than a major third. One-fourth of the intervals are semitones, which is an unusually large percentage of these intervals, not only in the present series, but in the music of other tribes analyzed according to this method.

No. 67. Dog Society Serenade (b) (Catalogue No. 857)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



WORDS

ma'doha'wits_____I have about given up,
śera'[93] mara'ta_____my dear heart

Analysis.—In this song, as in No. 66, the fourth and seventh are repeatedly sharped. Both songs are minor in tonality. The ascent of a semitone to the final tone is somewhat unusual. The rhythmic structure of this song comprises four periods, the second and fourth of which are longer than the others. The rhythmic units overlap in the fourth measure, but these irregularities give character and interest to the rhythm of the song as a whole. Twenty-five per cent of the intervals are fourths, an unusually large proportion in a song of this character. Six renditions were recorded, some of which were consecutive and others separated by shrill yells or spoken words. Such interpolations often occur between the renditions of songs which may be characterized as a "free expression." Observation of these transcriptions will show that in many instances the repetitions were without a break in the time. In other instances the repetitions were separated by a short pause. A prolonging of the final tone was less frequent among these tribes than among others studied by the writer. The definiteness of the final tone is indicated by the large number of songs in which the final tone occurs on the unaccented portion of the measure. (See analysis of No. 12.)

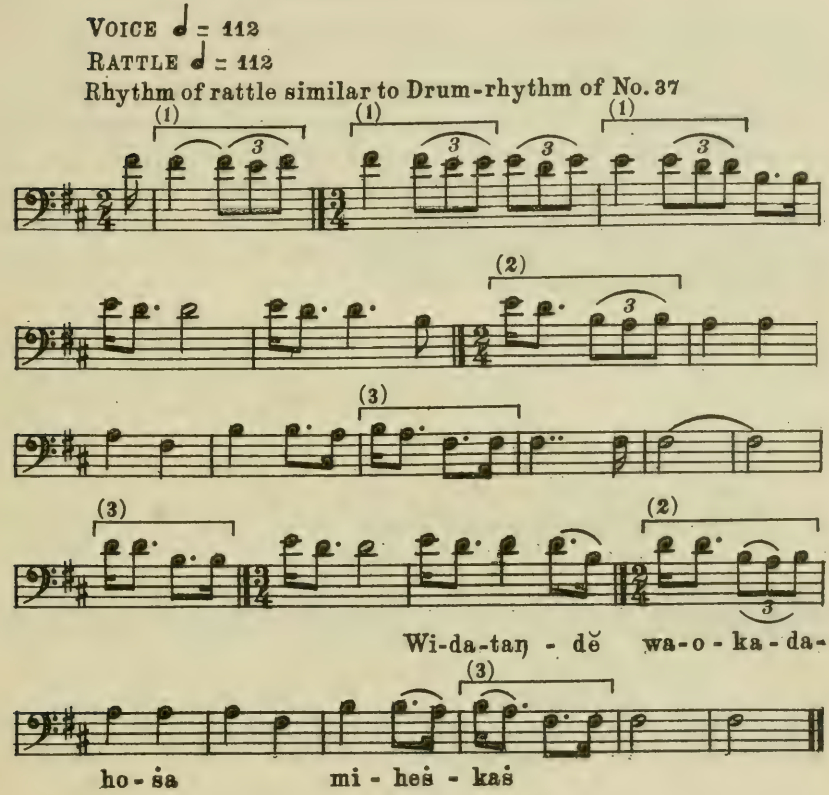
[93] Śera' is a term of endearment which has no exact English equivalent.

Wounded Face, the old warrior who recorded the following song, stated that it was properly sung with the accompaniment of a rattle, not a drum. Accordingly he recorded it in that manner, using his own Dog Society rattle (pl. 10, *b*), which he afterwards transferred to the writer. It is recalled that war parties of other tribes often used a rattle, one man shaking it as they went on foot toward the enemy.

No. 68. "The Enemy are Like Women"

(Catalogue No. 863)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



WORDS (MANDAN)

wi'dataŋ'dĕ ..... the enemy
wa'okadoho'śa ..... I do not fear
mi'heśkaś ..... (they are) like women

Analysis.—This song progresses chiefly by whole tones, more than half the intervals being major seconds. Three short phrases occur, which are designated as rhythmic units. The first and second of these

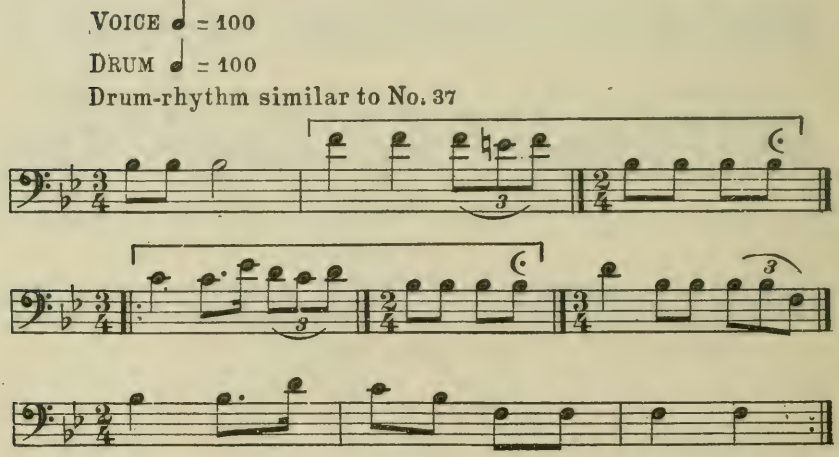
have the same division of the second count, and the second and third have the same division of the first count. This count-division (a sixteenth note followed by a dotted eighth) appears also in other parts of the song. This shows a thematic development in the song and also indicates that it was clearly remembered by the singer. The intonation was good throughout the several renditions.

Buffalo Society Songs

Little Crow stated that the members of the Buffalo Society were the older warriors of the tribe and included men between 50 and 60 years of age. Their principal meeting was held in the spring of the year, "when the grass was starting." Holding Eagle said that at these meetings "two men represented buffalo and wore headdresses with horns. The 30 or 40 members of the society wore buffalo-hide decorations, but did not wear a whole headdress of it." (See pl. 19, *a*.) None of the songs of this society were designated as war songs. This appears to be different from the society whose origin is described on pages 84 and 85, that organization having for its object the obtaining of buffalo for food.

No. 69. Buffalo Society Song (a) (Catalogue No. 854)

Recorded by Holding Eagle

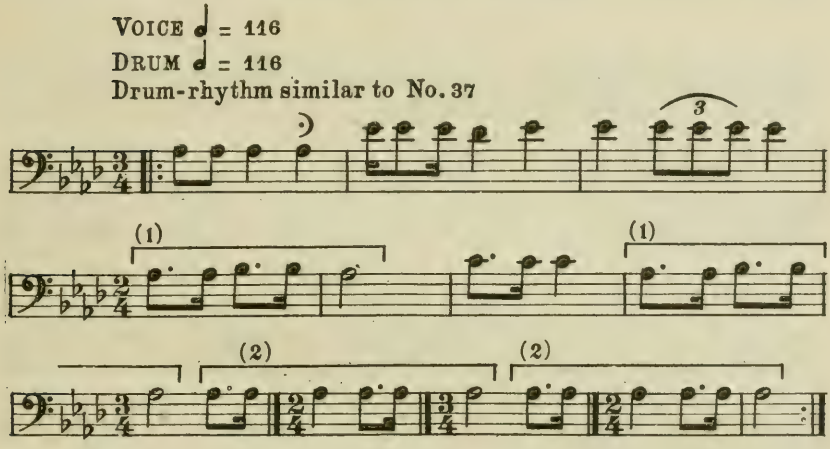


Analysis.—A wide variety of intervals distinguishes this melody from a majority of those under analysis. Eight ascending inter-

vals occur in the song, and these are of six kinds, ranging from a semitone to a fifth. The descending intervals are of the same degrees, except that there is no descending minor third. The ascending fifth as the opening interval gives a spirited character to the beginning of the song, especially as the melody returns to the initial tone after the sharped fourth. The highest tone of these opening measures does not appear again in the melody. The second and third measures are designated as a rhythmic unit, though the division of one count is changed in the repetition. Except for the fourth and fifth measures the melody is based on the major triad B flat–D–F.

No. 70. Buffalo Society Song (b) (Catalogue No. 855)

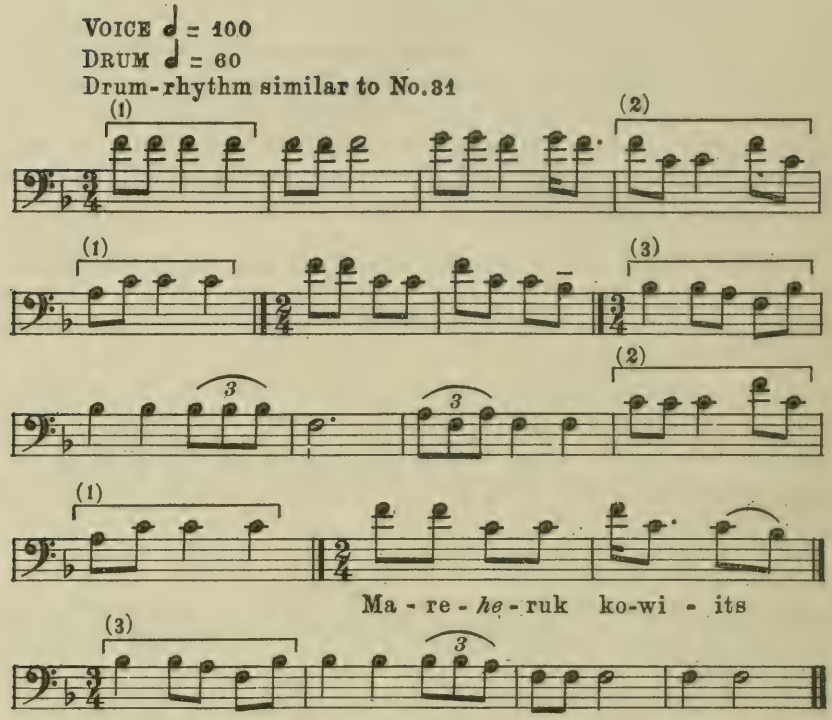
Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



Analysis.—This song contains 12 measures and two rhythmic units, but only 10 progressions. The last tone in the second measure was sung sharply staccato. This song, like Nos. 69 and 71, is major in tonality and omits the sixth and seventh tones above the keynote. It is interesting to observe the contrasts between these three songs (Nos. 69, 70, and 71). This melody has a compass of only five tones and begins and ends on the same tone.

No. 71. Buffalo Society Song (c) (Catalogue No. 856)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



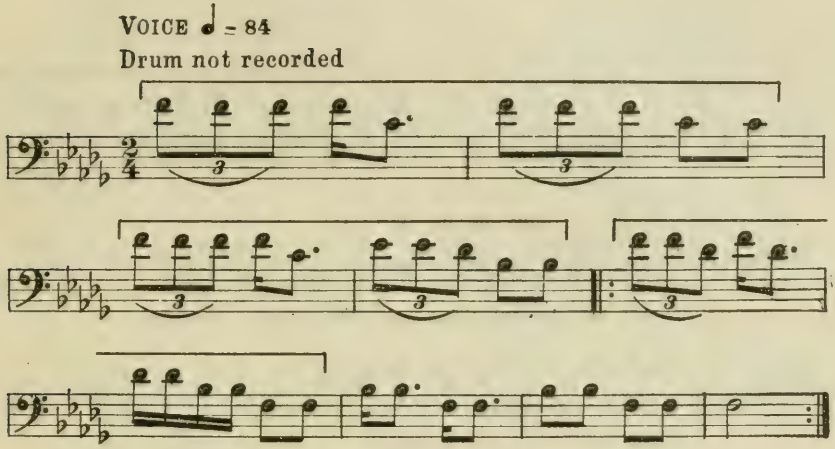
Analysis.—The words of this song are the same as song No. 65. Fifteen of the 36 intervals in this song are fourths, an interval prominent in songs concerning the buffalo as recorded among the Chippewa and Sioux (cf. No. 95). Divisions of a triple measure comprising quarter and eighth notes occur in three different forms, designated as three rhythmic units. These show an interesting use of thematic material. Five renditions were recorded, the tempo, in both voice and drum, being especially steady, except in the triplets, which, as frequently is the case, were slightly retarded in time.

As already indicated, none of the Buffalo Society songs were designated as war songs. It was said that certain songs, slower in tempo than the others, were sung while the men were seated, and others while they were dancing.

No. 72. Buffalo Society Dancing Song

(Catalogue No. 849)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



Analysis.—This song comprises four periods, the first, second, and fourth being repetitions of the rhythmic unit, though slightly changed in the sixth measure. More than half the progressions are fourths (cf. No. 95). In this, as in the two songs next preceding, the sixth and seventh tones of the octave are omitted, but this song is minor and the other songs are major in tonality.

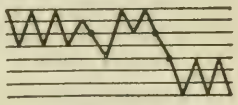


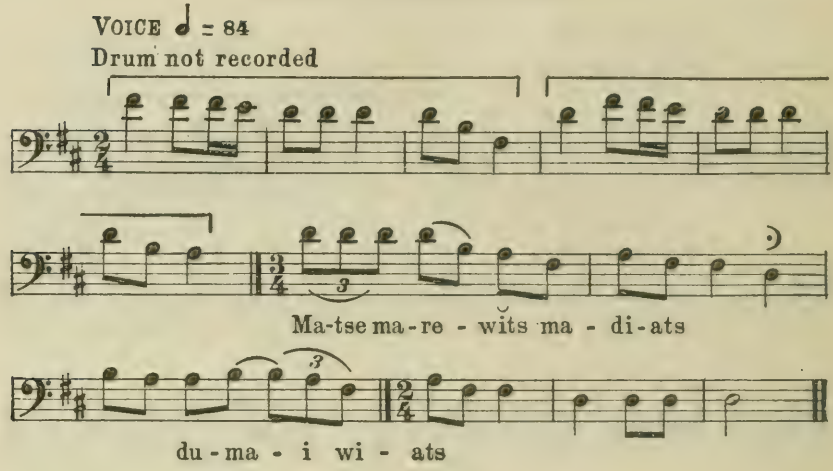
FIG. 5. Plot of song No. 72.

The progressions in this song, without reference to the time values of the tones, are shown in figure 5, the horizontal lines indicating scale degrees. A similar diagram is shown with analysis of song No. 92.

No. 73. Buffalo Society Serenade (a)

(Catalogue No. 845)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



WORDS (HIDATSA)

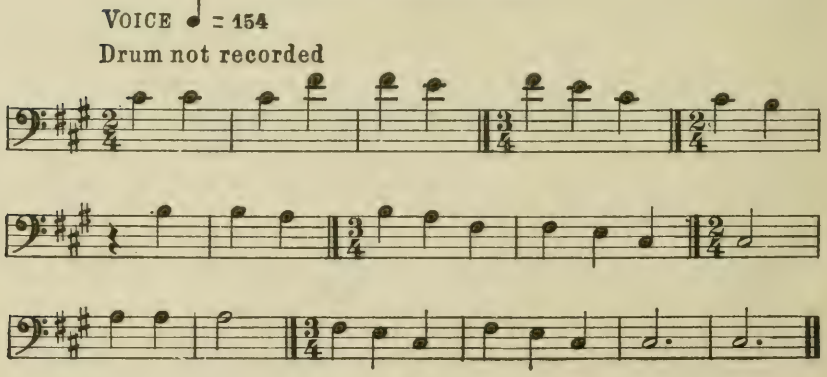
matse'_____	man
mare'wits_____	I will go
madi'ats_____	I think
dumaï'wiäts_____	someone is crying

Analysis.—The first two periods of this song comprise three measures each and are in double time, the third period comprises two measures in triple time, and the fourth period comprises one triple and three double measures. The minor third and major second are the principal intervals of progression, constituting about two-thirds of the entire number of intervals. In structure the song is classified as melodic with harmonic framework. It is based on the fourth five-toned scale and has a compass of 10 tones.

No. 74. Buffalo Society Serenade (b)

(Catalogue No. 904)

Recorded by LITTLE CROW



WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

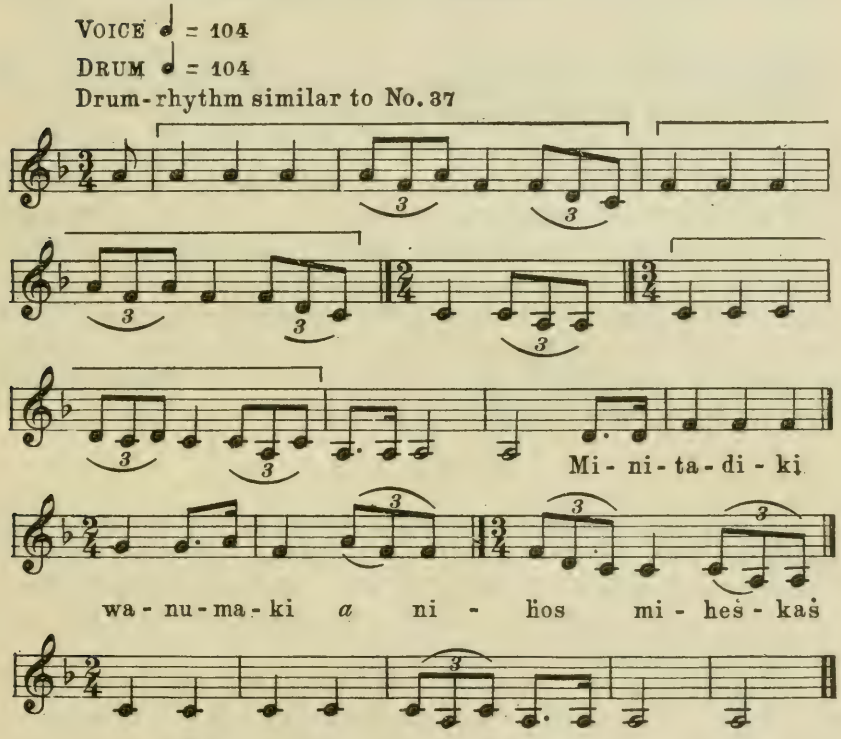
no.....O
matse' hiruk'.....to be a man

Analysis.—The significance of the words of this song was not explained. It is noted, however, that the term "man" is frequently synonymous with "warrior." The melody contains only half and quarter notes, but the rapid tempo and variety in measure lengths give the song a rhythmic character. This is a Mandan song and was said to "go back to the time when the Mandan were separate from the Hidatsa."

Horse Society Songs

No. 75. Horse Society Song (a) (Catalogue No. 833)

Recorded by Ben Benson



WORDS (MANDAN)

mini'tadiki
wanu'maki
ni'hos
mi'heškaš

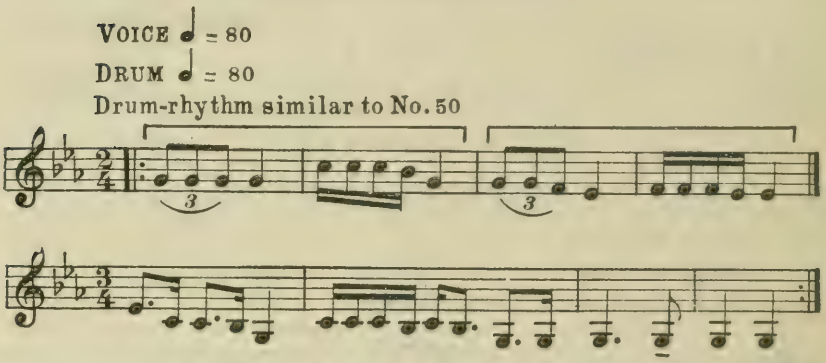
(Free translation)
The Hidatsa are not men but are like women

Analysis.—The rhythmic form of this song is not so regular nor so interesting as that of the Buffalo Society songs Nos. 69–74.

The rhythmic unit occurs only in the first portion, while in the second portion, containing the words, there is a frequent triplet division of the count. More than one-third of the intervals are minor thirds, though the song is major in tonality. The song is melodic in structure and contains all the tones of the octave except the seventh.

No. 76. Horse Society Song (b) (Catalogue No. 834)

Recorded by BEN BENSON



Analysis.—This melody begins with an ascending fourth and it will be noted that the framework of the melody consists of the tones of the minor triad. The rhythmic unit is interesting and comprises two measures. Eight renditions were recorded without a break in the time. The indicated drum rhythm was occasionally changed to even quarter-note beats, drum and voice being synchronous. Fifteen progressions occur in the song, nine of which are major seconds, four are minor thirds, and two are fourths.

WAR SONGS

Although the Mandan contributed numerous war songs to this work, the brief notes concerning war customs were given only by members of the Hidatsa tribe. These concern the sallying forth of a war party in search or pursuit of an enemy, the defensive warfare of the village not being described.

Pan (pls. 10, *a*; 14, *c*) said that a war party was usually organized by one man, who quietly asked his friends to join it. Tobacco accompanied the invitation, and this tobacco was smoked at the meetings held before they left the village. A war party usually comprised about 20 men. They started about daybreak, going quietly so they would not be stopped by relatives nor followed by unwelcome

additions to their number. The man who started the expedition was usually its leader. He had a stiff untanned wolf hide as his fetish. He appointed about three scouts, and the leader of these carried the wolf hide across his back, the head over his left shoulder, and the tail under his right arm. The wolf hide was "incensed" with burning sweet grass before it was given to the leader of the scouts. It is said that the wolf hide "sometimes came to life, walked around, and advised the warriors as to the best course for them to pursue." (A similar tradition among the Sioux is recorded in Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 189; cf. also pp. 348 and 388.)

The Hidatsa counted five coups to each slain enemy, the honor of counting these being designated as follows: The man who killed the enemy and the man who first struck him were each entitled to wear a plain eagle feather, the second man who struck him wore an eagle feather with one diagonal black stripe, the third wore an eagle feather with two, and the fourth with three similar black stripes.

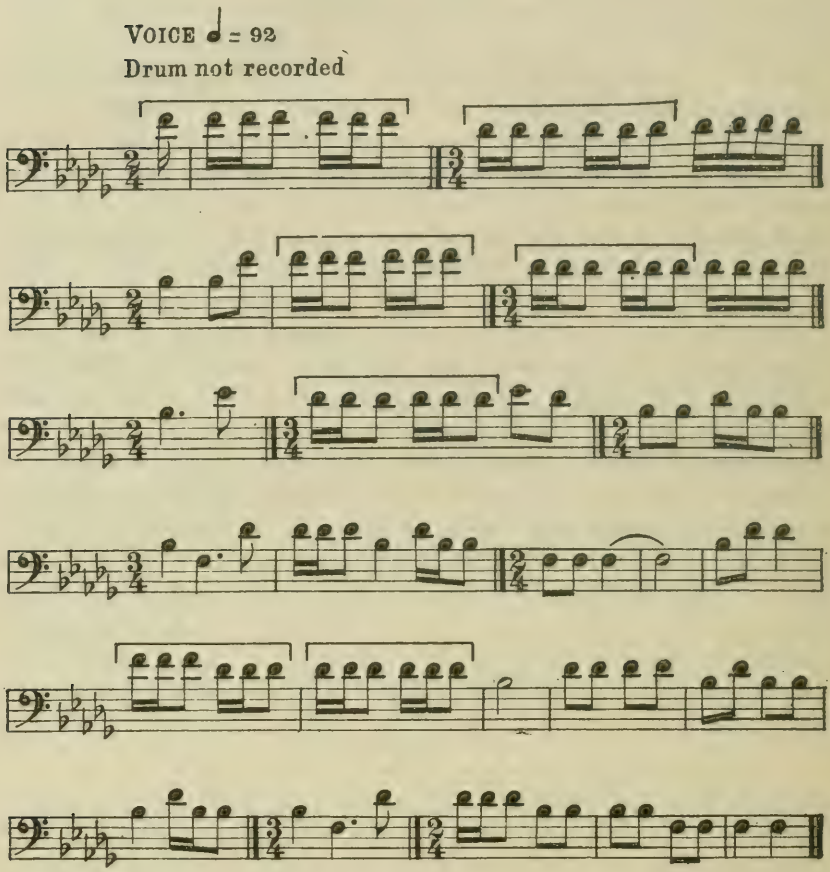
Old Dog said that a woman who had lost a relative in war sometimes went with a war party, though she had no relative among the warriors. She cooked and mended for them and incited them to avenge her relative. If they secured a scalp they gave it to her, and she carried it in the victory dance after their return. Scalps were dried and kept for a time, after which some put them with their medicine and others threw them away.

The following song was sung while the warriors were sitting in the lodge, before starting on an expedition:

No. 77. Song When Organizing a War Party

(Catalogue No. 888)

Recorded by OLD DOG



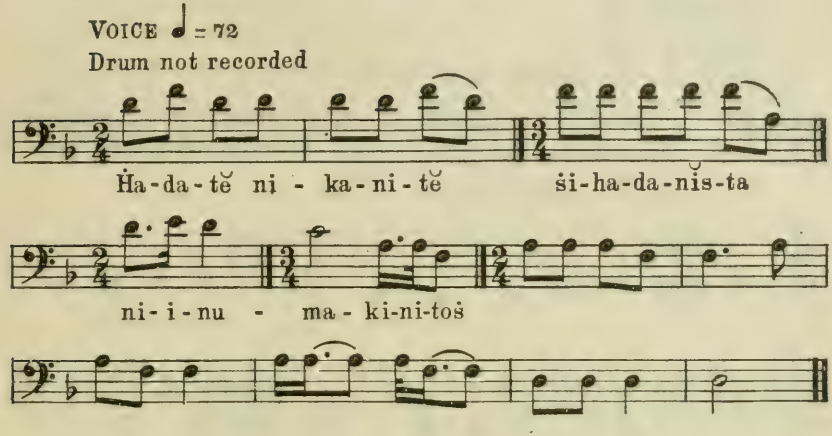
Analysis.—This song is strongly harmonic in character, has a compass of an octave, and contains only the tones of the minor triad and fourth. The rhythmic unit is short and occurs in both double and triple measures. Progression is chiefly by the minor third, which constitutes more than half the entire number of intervals.

The words of the following song indicate that it was sung by a leader of warriors to stimulate the younger members of the party. The melody is dignified, almost stately, reflecting the spirit of the words.

No. 78. "Young Wolves, Do Your Best"

(Catalogue No. 865)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



WORDS (MANDAN)

ĥa'datĕ' ni'kanitĕ'..... young wolves
ši'hada'nĭsta..... do your best
ni'inuma'kinitoš'..... you are men

Analysis.—The tempo of this song is slow and the change to triple time gives variety to the rhythm. In harmonic form it is unusually regular. Seven major and seven minor thirds occur and are divided almost equally between ascending and descending progressions. The melody follows the tones of the tonic and dominant chords and contains all the tones of the octave except the fourth.

The man who recorded the following song was commonly known as Butterfly (pl. 15, *c*), a name which was due to a misinterpretation of his Hidatsa name. In the Hidatsa he was called Apaü'gûs, meaning "white clay nose," but the word for "butterfly" is so nearly like this word that white people gave him the name, by which he was known throughout his life. Butterfly died January 27, 1918. His other songs are Nos. 88 and 106.

Butterfly said that the following song was his great-grandfather's war song and was of the sort sung before the departure of a war party.

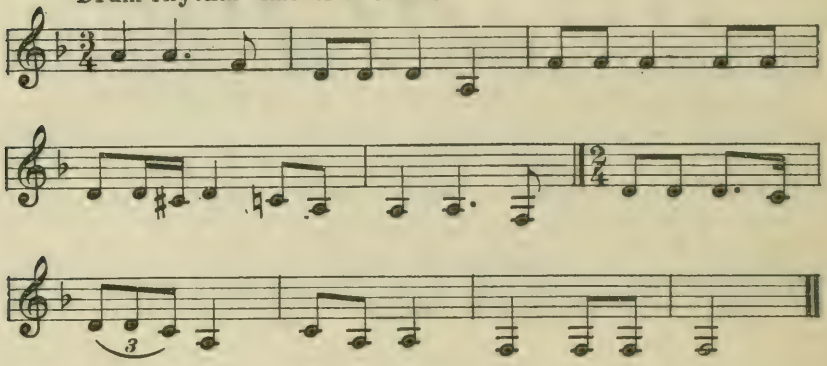
No. 79. Old War Song (Catalogue No. 896)

Recorded by BUTTERFLY

VOICE ♩ = 80

DRUM ♩ = 80

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 32



WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

ne'mata'ruk.....the first time (he went)
aku'hirĭts.....he brought it (an expression of sarcasm meaning that he returned empty-handed)
iku'lĭparuk.....the next time
aku'warets.....he brings it

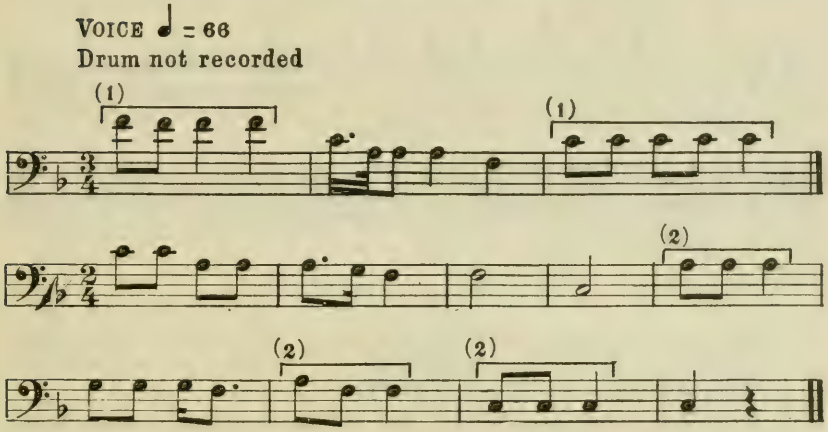
Analysis.—A wide variety of intervals is used in this song, the largest being a major sixth and the smallest a semitone. The melodic tones are those of the minor triad and the seventh, which is sharped in the fourth measure. On listening to the phonograph record there is a feeling that D instead of F was desired as the final tone, but that it was below the range of the singer's voice. The intonation was wavering throughout all the renditions, due in large part to the advanced age of the singer.

The two songs next following are those of the medicine men whose power was supposed to be essential to the success of a war party. It was not unusual for the leader of a war party to be a man who had dreamed a dream and believed in its help. Old Dog said that the following song belonged to his uncle, One Buffalo, who received it in a dream. He saw a wolf in his vision, and the wolf sang this song to him. One Buffalo lived to old age and died more than 60 years ago. When acting as leader of a war party he said, "This

is a medicine song. I want all our party to return in safety and I want you all to sing this song with me." Then the warriors all sang the song. Before making the phonograph record Old Dog spoke a rapid sentence which was caught by the recorder and later translated. He said "Grandfather, I am going to sing your song. Do not be offended." Similar sentences were spoken by Sioux singers before recording important songs and are noted in Bulletin 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 95 and 163. The Sioux also had a war song given by a wolf in a vision (Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., No. 53).

No. 80. War Medicine Song (Catalogue No. 891)

Recorded by Old Dog

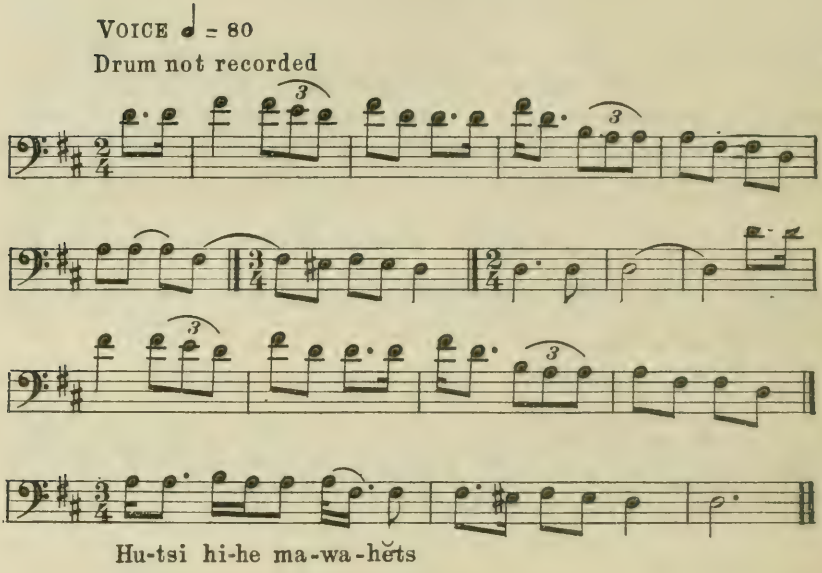


Analysis.—This melody is marked by strength and vigor. It contains 12 measures and only 14 progressions. It is rhythmic and contains two somewhat similar phrases, one in triple and one in double time, these being designated as the rhythmic units of the song. Only three ascending intervals occur; the song has a compass of 11 tones, descending steadily from the highest to the lowest tone of the compass.

It is said that the leader of a war party usually desired a rain in which to attack the enemy's village (see Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 348). The story of the next song is lost, and we do not know by what mysterious power the medicine-man could command the wind nor what advantage he gained by it. We are only told that it is the "medicine song" of Old Dog, a prominent chief of the old days, and that he sang it before a battle.

No. 81. "I will Bring the Wind" (Catalogue No. 846)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



WORDS (HIDATSA)

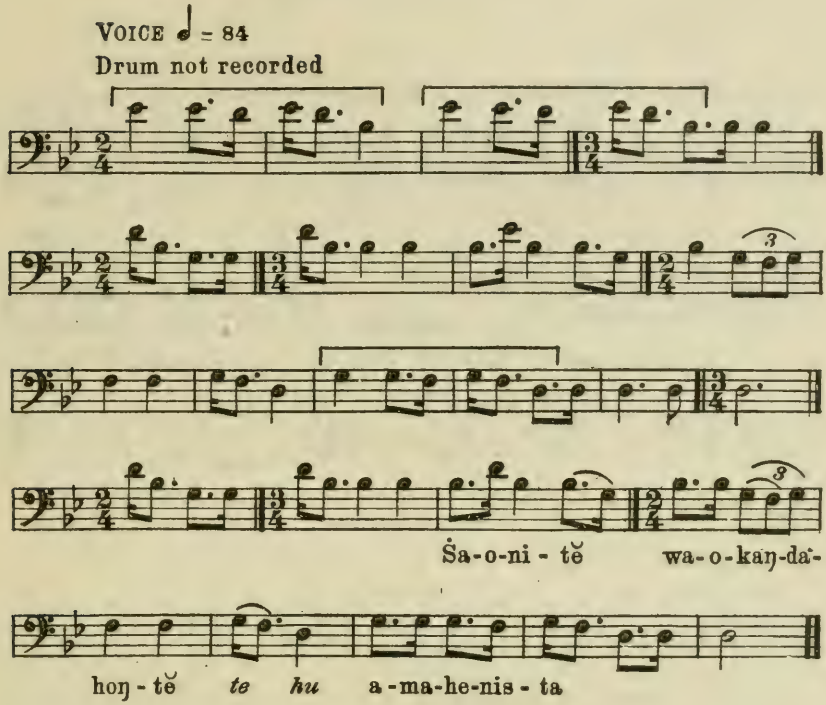
hu'tsi.....a wind
hi'he.....to bring
mawa'hĕts.....I desire

Analysis.—An augmented second in descending progression occurs twice in this song and is found in no other song of the present series. It was not noted among the Chippewa, but occurs in one of the Sioux songs recorded by Chippewa (Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., No. 75) and in three Sioux songs (Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 220). Other songs containing syncopations are noted in the analysis of No. 1. This song is peculiar in its progressions, more than one-third of the intervals containing only one or two semitones. About one-third of the intervals are major thirds and the song is strongly major in tonality. The melody tones are those of the fourth five-toned scale.

The two songs next following express the eagerness of the warriors to reach the enemy. No. 82 is said to be the song of Flying Eagle, a man of great stature, who did not fear to charge the enemy alone, riding boldly among them.

No. 82. "Take Me to the Sioux" (Catalogue No. 848)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



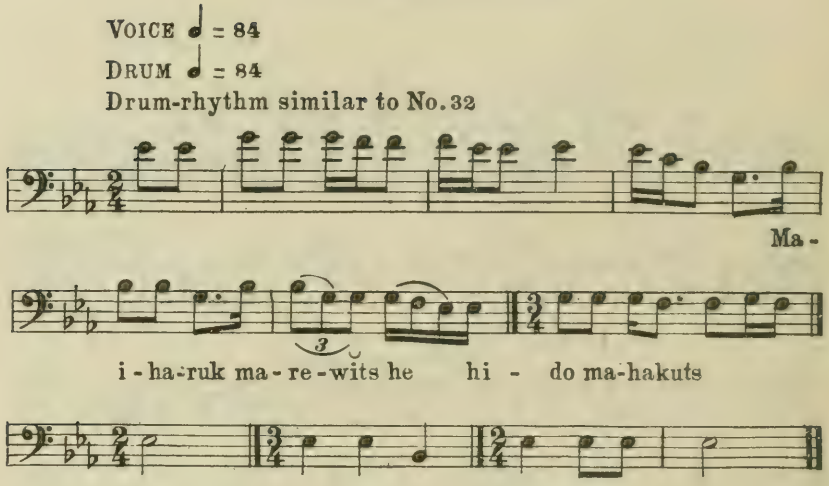
WORDS (MANDAN)

Ṡa'oni'tĕ.....The Hunkpapa Sioux
wa'okaŋdahoŋ'tĕ.....are to be feared
a'mahenis'ta.....take me to them

Analysis.—This song contains six sorts of ascending and three of descending intervals, giving a wide variety of progressions. An intelligent use of rhythm is evident throughout the song. It is interesting to compare the rhythmic unit with the remainder of the song, which contains many measures similar to the unit but not repeating it with exactness. In general character the song is forceful and positive. It has a range of nine tones, beginning on the sixth above and ending on the dominant below the keynote.

No. 83. "I Will Go" (Catalogue No. 907)

Recorded by WOLF GHOST



WORDS (HIDATSA)

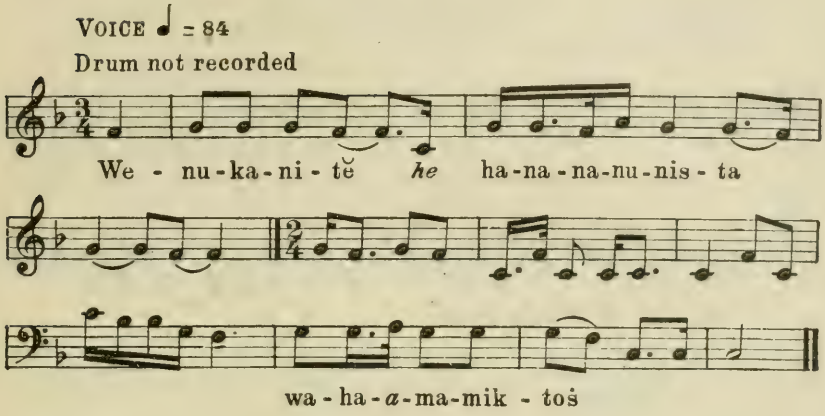
ma'iha'ruk	If that is the enemy
mare'wits he	I will go
hi'do	here
maha'kuts	I am

Analysis.—In this song there is no ascending sequence between accented tones, though the final interval is an ascending interval. The rhythm is characterized by the division of a quarter note into two-sixteenths and an eighth, but no rhythmic unit occurs. About half the intervals are major seconds. The song has a range of ten tones and in structure it is melodic with harmonic framework. The tones are those of the fourth five-toned scale.

The two songs next following are "scout songs." No. 84 is supposed to be addressed to his comrades by a scout who took up his duty at night. Probably he went to look for the location of the enemy.

No. 84. "Comrades, Sleep On" (Catalogue No. 880)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (MANDAN)

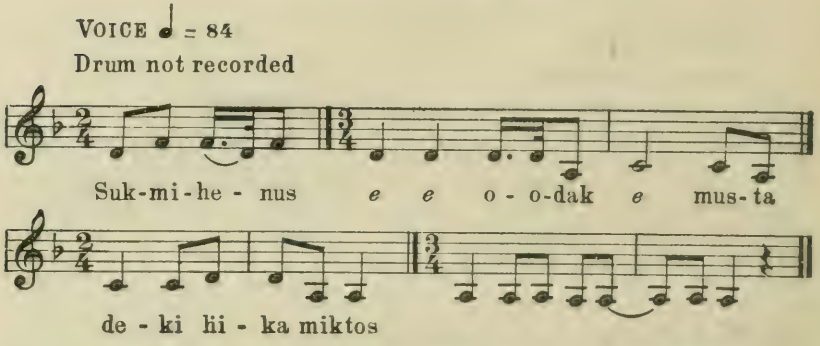
wenu'kanitĕ'_____my comrades
ha'nananu'nista_____sleep on
waha'mamiktoš'_____I precede you as scout

Analysis.—The progressions of this melody are peculiar, 17 of the 26 intervals being whole tones and seven being fourths, the remaining two intervals comprising an ascending fifth and a descending minor third. F is regarded as the keynote of the song but G appears as the first tone in six measures and C as the first tone in the remaining four measures. The song contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth and seventh and has a compass of 12 tones.

The number of scouts was in proportion to the size of the war party, a large expedition usually sending out 10 scouts and a small party only 2 scouts. The work of a scout was often lonely, and the scenes of home returned vividly to the mind of the watcher. The words of No. 85 recall the work of the young women in the gardens, as described on pages 52 and 53.

No. 85. "She Walks Alone" (Catalogue No. 864)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



WORDS (MANDAN)

sukmi'henus o'odak_____ a certain maiden
mus'ta_____to the garden
de'ki_____goes,
hi'ka_____lonely
mik'toš_____she walks

Analysis.—This song was recorded by Wounded Face on two different occasions, and the duplication was not observed until both phonograph records had been transcribed. On comparing the two transcriptions it was found that they did not differ in the slightest respect. Another instance of exact duplication in pitch, tempo, and tone values is noted in the analysis of No. 39. Other songs containing syncopations are noted in the analysis of No. 1.

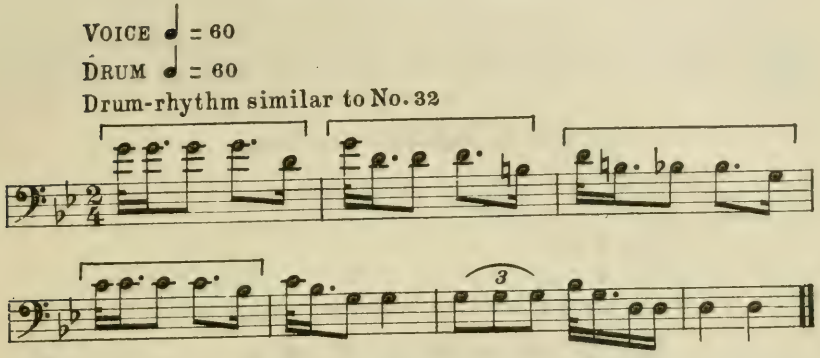
In this, as in a majority of the songs that followed the return of a victorious war party, the first progression is upward. The song is major in tonality, yet seven of the ten progressions are minor thirds.

As there were "medicine songs" to insure the success of a war party, so there were songs to revive the strength of those who were almost exhausted in battle. The singing of such a song was undoubtedly accompanied by the use of some medicinal herb. The following song was said to have been "handed down" and the description of its use appears to have been forgotten.

No. 86. Song to Renew a Warrior's Strength

(Catalogue No. 858)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



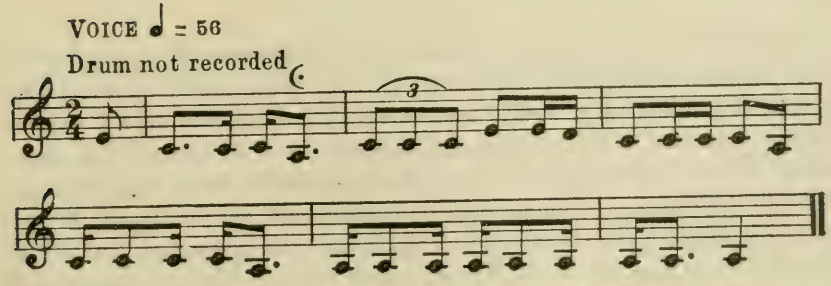
Analysis.—Eight renditions of this song were recorded, and in them all the tones transcribed as B natural and B flat were sung as indicated. The rhythmic unit is clear and was exactly repeated. The song contains no change of time and no interval of a major third, almost half the intervals being minor thirds. It is interesting to note the prominence of the subdominant in the latter portion of the song. The singer in beginning the repetitions of this song sounded the octave above the final tone as an approach to the high note on which the song begins. This tone does not appear at the first of the phonograph record and evidently was used to steady the voice in the large ascent. The same peculiarity was observed in other records by this singer.

A woman's song of the scalp dance was recorded by one who took part in those dances when she was a young woman.

No. 87. Woman's Scalp Dance Song

(Catalogue No. 902)

Recorded by LEADING ONE

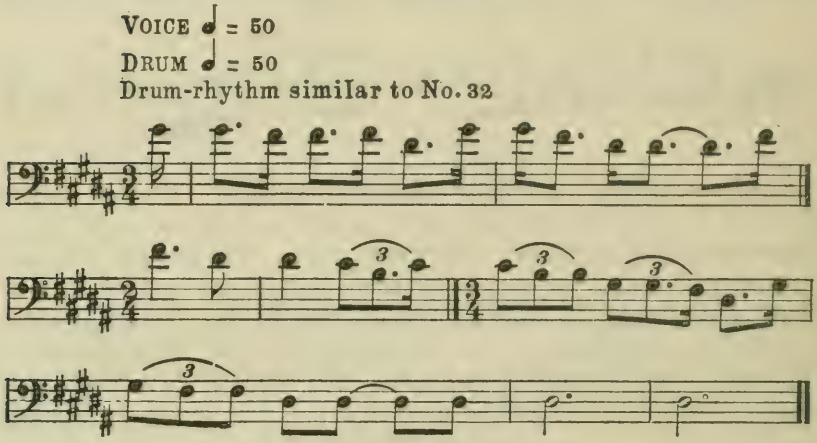


Analysis.—The tempo of this song is very slow, which is interesting in connection with the occasion of its use. An Indian once said that when excited they sang louder but not faster. In tonality this song is minor and more than half the intervals are minor thirds.

In the dances that followed the return of a victorious war party a man might sing his personal war song, as he related some deed of valor.

No. 88. Butterfly's War Song (Catalogue No. 897)

Recorded by BUTTERFLY



Analysis.—The fourth and seventh tones of the octave do not occur in this song. These are the tones of the complete octave which are omitted in the fourth five-toned scale, but that scale is major in tonality, while the present song is minor in tonality, the third tone being a minor third above the keynote. (Cf. Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 188, and Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 141.) This song, like No. 87, is very slow in tempo. Drum and voice were synchronous on the first of each measure, the double drumbeat being steadily maintained through the measures in triple time. With the exception of two ascending fourths the intervals are minor thirds and major seconds.

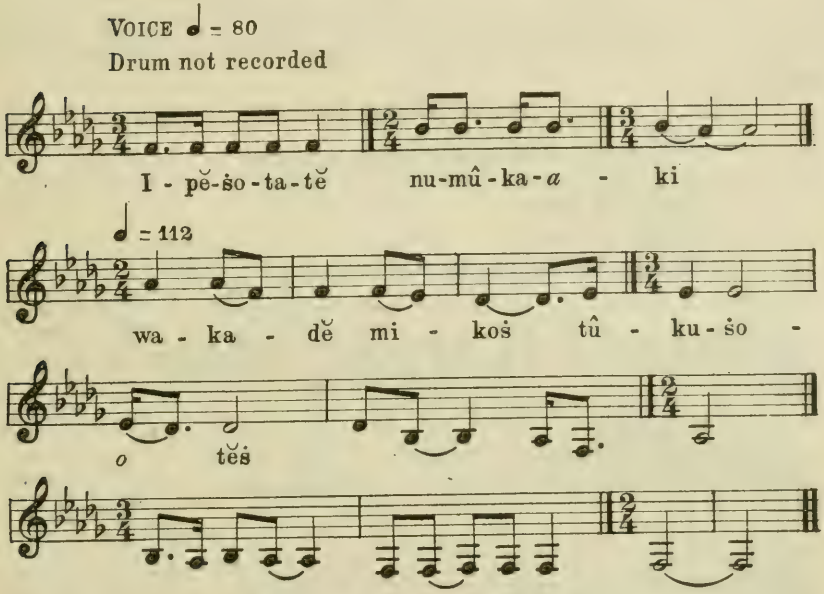
It is the custom of many Indian tribes to honor their successful warriors by inserting their names in "praise songs." Some tribes insert the name of a new hero in an old song, the former name being withdrawn. The Mandan appear to have used the same song for several warriors, the different names being used in consecutive renditions. Thus a war song was recorded by Crow's Heart, which contained, in consecutive renditions, the names of Two Bull, Runs-after-eagle, Spotted Weasel, and Sitting Crow, these being

followed by the words (Mandan) *a'wado'du wade'duk waśo'kiduts*, translated "Any land where I go, in front of me," meaning that wherever they went to seek the enemy they were successful. This song was not transcribed. An example of another type of "praise song" is shown in No. 89, which celebrates the Indian virtue of unlimited generosity. In the translation the name of White Feather appears. while another rendition proclaimed the generosity of Little Bull.

No. 89. Song in Praise of Generosity

(Catalogue No. 881)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (MANDAN)

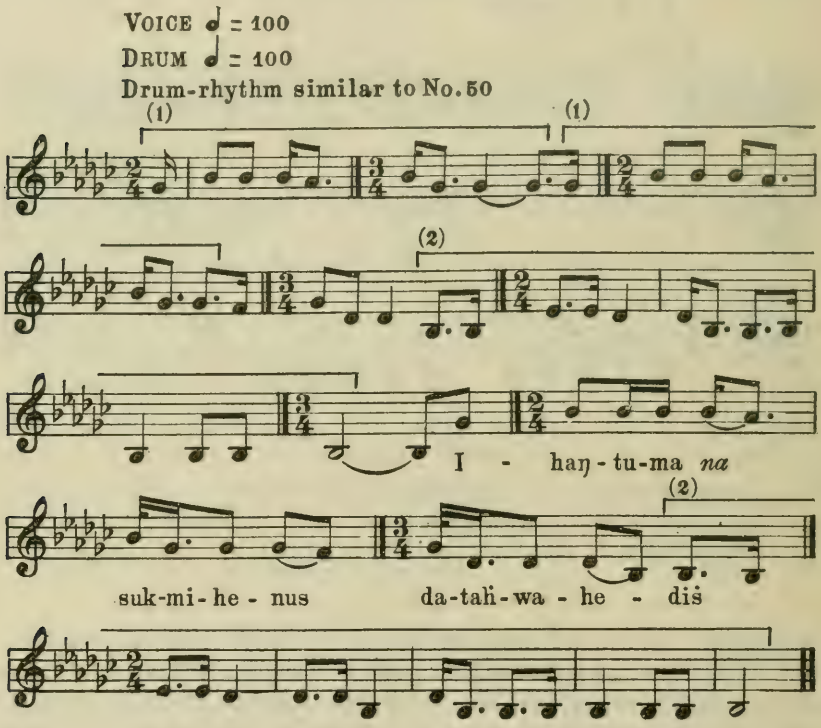
I'pĕšo'tatĕ'	Him, White Feather,
nu'mûkaki	that man's
wa'kadĕ	property
mikoš'	he never (keeps)
tûku'šotĕś	it is true

Analysis.—The ascending fourth at the beginning of this song is the only interval other than minor thirds and major seconds occurring in the entire melody. D flat is considered to be the keynote, the song thus containing the tones of the fourth five-toned scale, beginning on the third in the upper and ending on the third in the lower octave. For other songs containing a change of tempo see the analysis of No. 8.

The following is an example of the songs that were composed, either in words or music, to commemorate some special victory. It was recorded by two singers, Scattered Corn and Wolf Head. On comparing the records it was found that the melody was the same, but the words were slightly different. The writer played the two records for the Indians, who said that both sets of words were correct, but that Scattered Corn's referred to an incident of very old times, while Wolf Head's referred to a comparatively recent occurrence at Knife River. The words sung by Wolf Head were Hidatsa and were said to mean, "These five. They must be women. I made them cry." The incident concerned the killing and scalping of five Sioux by warriors from the Mandan-Hidatsa village at Fort Berthold. No incident was related by Scattered Corn, the song being old and the circumstances of its composition having been long forgotten.

No. 90. Victory Song (Catalogue No. 806)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

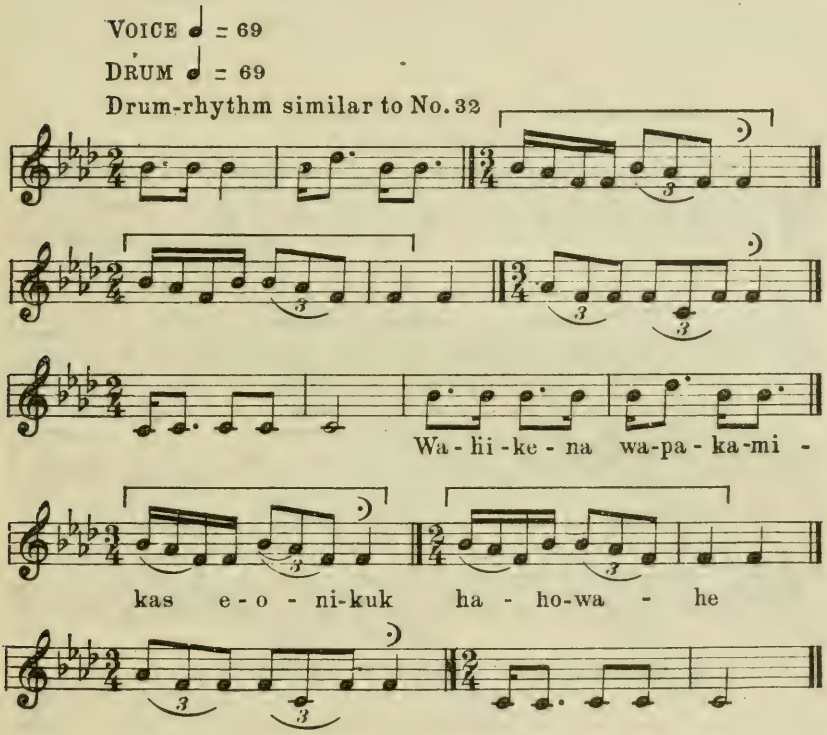
Ihaŋ'tuma_____The Yankton Sioux
sukmi'henus_____young woman
da'taȟwahe'diš_____I made her cry

Analysis.—The two rhythmic units of this song are interesting and well defined. An unusual variety of intervals occurs, the largest being a minor sixth and the smallest a semitone. In structure the song is classified as melodic with harmonic framework. All the tones of the octave except the fourth are present in the melody.

The remaining songs of this group (Nos. 91–98) are typical songs of the victory dances that followed the return of a successful war party. Scalps of the enemy were usually carried in these dances. It is said that the following song was sung by the women.

No. 91. Song of Triumph (Catalogue No. 815)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

wa'liikena_____the wicked one
wapa'kamikas_____was shy
e'onikuk_____is it he?
haho'waha_____(exclamation of pleasure)

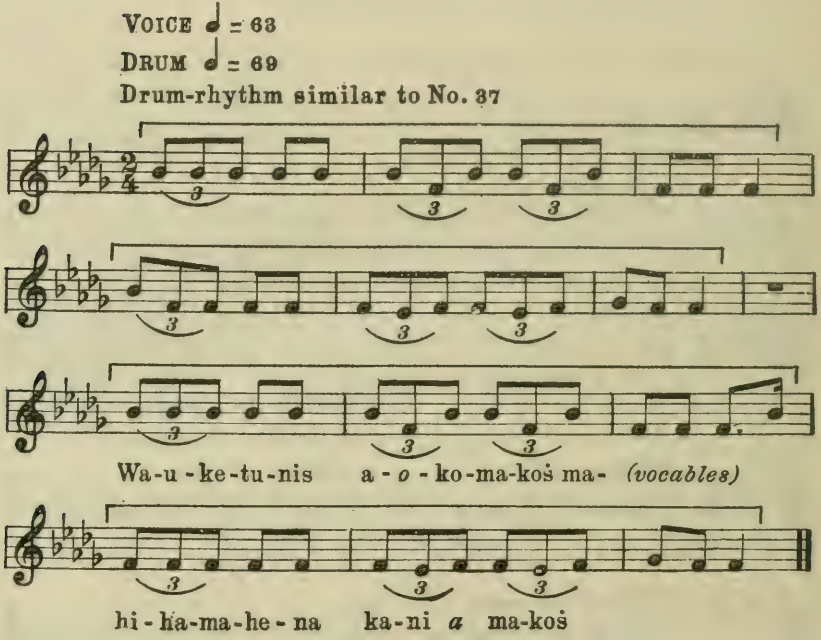
Analysis.—Three renditions of this song were recorded, the rhythm being unvarying throughout the repetitions. The phrase designated as a rhythmic unit is simply a recurrent phrase, not a theme that is worked over, as, for instance, in No. 82. The ascending seventh at the introduction of the words was sung with reasonable accuracy. Two triads form the framework of the melody, B flat–D flat–F, in measures 1 to 5, and F–A flat–C in measures 6 to 8, followed by a repetition in the part of the song containing the words. The interval of a fourth comprises about one-third of the progressions.

The words of this song suggest the treachery of the enemy.

No. 92. "He Holds a Knife in His Hand"

(Catalogue No. 816)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

wa'uketu'nis_____the inimical one
ako'makoš_____is over there
ma'hihama'hena ka'ni_____he is holding a knife in his hand
makoš'_____as he lies there

Analysis.—This song contains the tones E flat, F, G flat, and B flat, suggesting E flat as the keynote, but the progressions of the melody are such that the song is analyzed with B flat as the keynote. This is one of many instances in which the terms "keynote"

and "key" are not fully adapted to the analysis of Indian songs and should be understood as being used chiefly for convenience of observation. The tonality is not established, as the third above B flat does not occur. The final tone is unaccented. Other songs with this peculiarity are noted in the analysis of No. 12. The song has a range of only five tones, and the only progressions are fourths and major seconds, which are about equal in number. Throughout the three renditions the drum was slightly faster than the voice. The tempo of the voice was fairly regular, though not rigidly maintained. At the end of the first section and also at the close of the song the voice trailed downward in a glissando. (See analysis of No. 1.)

The progressions in this song are shown in figure 6. (Cf. similar diagram of song No. 72.)

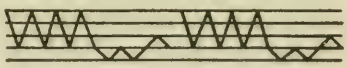
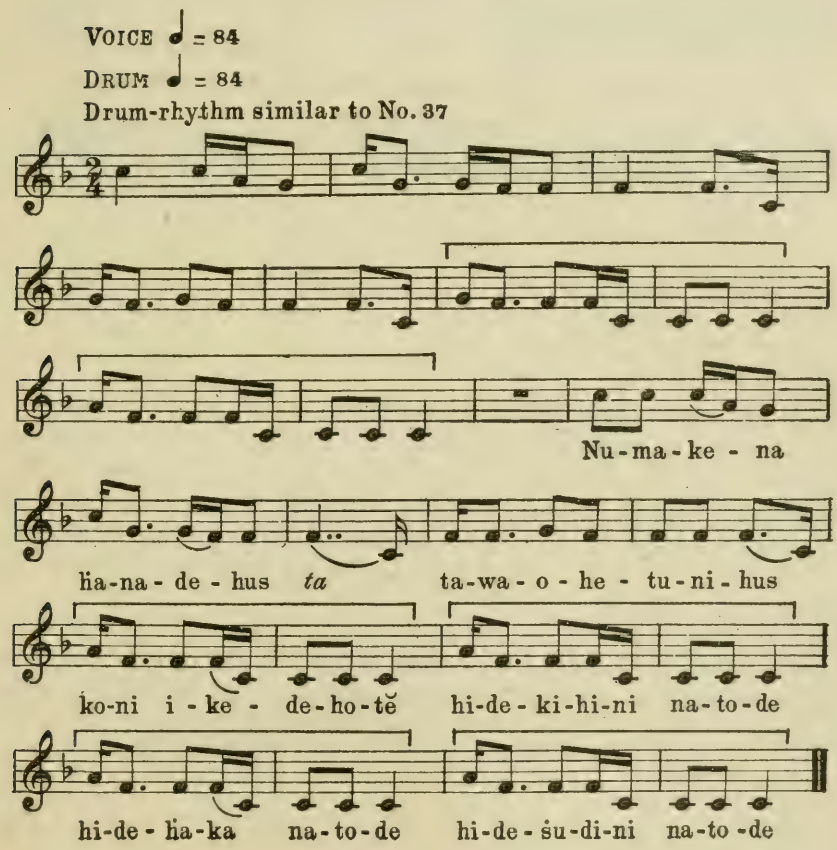


FIG. 6.—Plot of song No. 92.

No. 93. "The Enemy Came as a Wolf"

(Catalogue No. 817)

Recorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

nu'makena——that man (the enemy)
ĭana'dehus——came as a wolf
tawa'ohetu'nihus——seeking
koni'ha[99]——the larger part (of the expedition)
i'kedehotē——returned with shame
hi'dekihi'ni——he must be home
na'tode——by this time
hi'deĭaka——he must be sad
na'tode——by this time
hi'deṡudini——he must be hanging his head in shame
na'tode——by this time

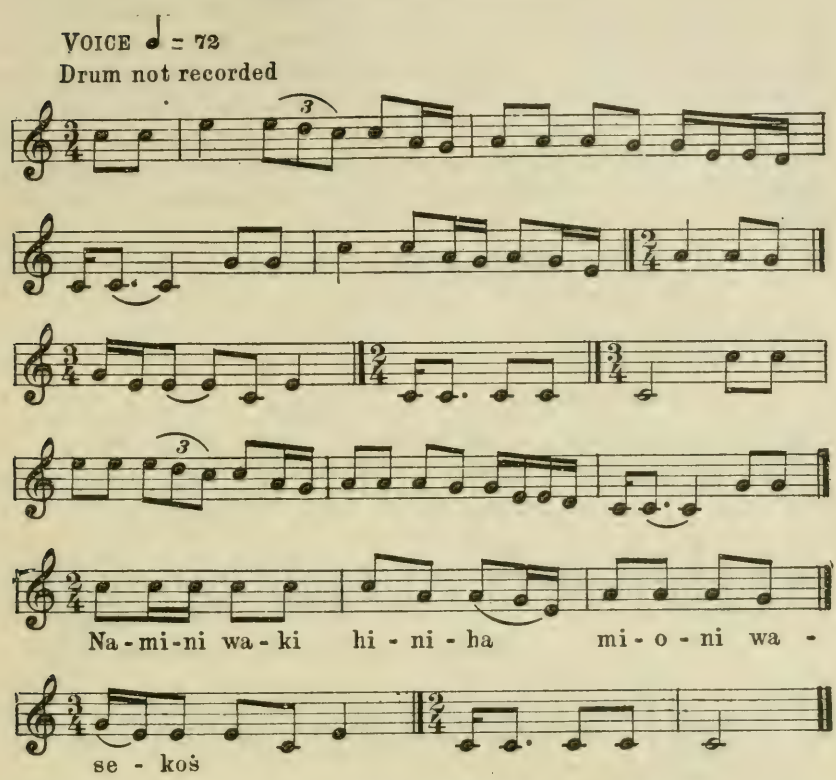
Analysis.—This melody, especially the rhythmic unit, has a taunting sound in keeping with the words (cf. Nos. 18 and 107 of the present work; also Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 91). A wide variety of intervals occurs in this song, although almost one-third of the progressions are fourths. The song is melodic in structure and contains only the tones of the major triad and second. Two renditions were recorded and show no differences. A downward glissando occurred at the end of the first section and also at the close of the song (see No. 1).

This is the personal victory song of Foolish Soldier, a nephew of Scattered Corn, who died many years ago.

[99] The singer elided this with the following word.

No. 94. "I Killed Three" (Catalogue No. 818)

Recvorded by SCATTERED CORN



WORDS (MANDAN)

na'mini	the three
waki'hiniha	killed
mi'ona [e]	I am the one
i'wasekoš	who did it

Analysis.—This song progresses chiefly by whole tones and only one-third of the progressions are larger than a minor third. The accented tones are widely separated. No rhythmic unit occurs, although the count divisions of the third, fourth, and fifth measures before the end of the song resemble the count divisions of measures in the first part of the song, with a different accent.

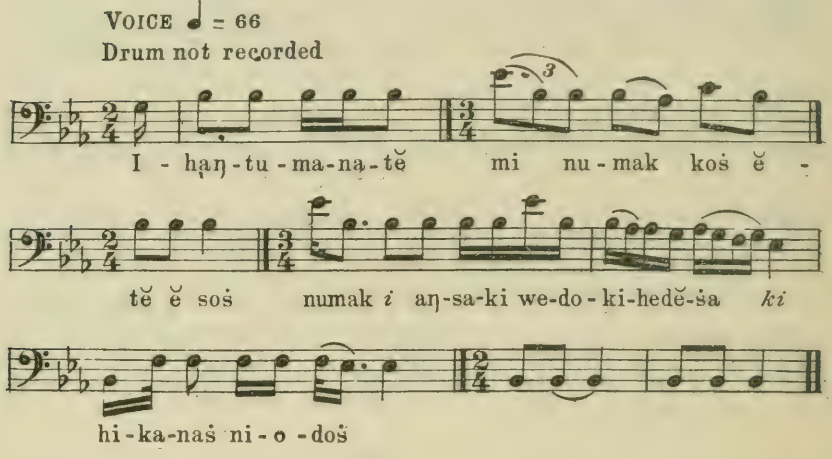
This song refers to an occasion when the Sioux disguised themselves by coverings of buffalo robes and looked over the top of a butte. They were discovered by the Mandan, who killed three

[e] This was elided with the following word by the singer.

of them. A song with similar words was recorded by Scattered Corn, who said that like No. 94 it was a personal victory song of her nephew. The incident which she related in connection with the song was as follows: Some Sioux warriors, pursued by the Mandan, covered themselves with buffalo robes and walked single file, pretending to be buffalos. When out of sight they threw away the buffalo robes. The Mandan found the robes and saw the trick of the Sioux. Renewing the chase, they overtook the Sioux and killed them all. Foolish Soldier was probably a member of this war party.

No. 95. "Disguised as a Buffalo" (Catalogue No. 847)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT.



WORDS (MANDAN)

Ihaŋ'tumanatĕ'	O Yankton Sioux
mi	I
nu'mak koś	am a man
ĕ'tĕĕsoś	you said
nu'mak	a man
aŋ 'saki	why
wedo'kihedĕ'śa	are you disguised as a buffalo?
hi'kanaś	you discredit
niödoś	yourselves

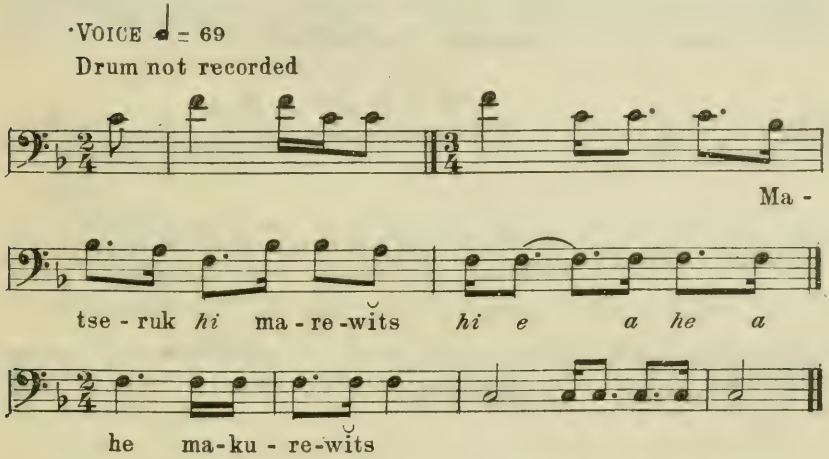
Analysis.—It is interesting to note that more than one-third of the progressions in this song are fourths, as this interval was prominent in Chippewa songs and Sioux songs concerning the buffalo (see Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 99, and Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 286). The ascending trend at the opening of the song is

unusual, also the wideness of the melody formation. In contrast to this we note the lack of interest in the pitch of the accented tones, the variety of progression being entirely in the unaccented parts of the measures. The tempo of the song is slow, which emphasizes the scorn expressed in the words.

The following war song was used by members of the Fox Society. The same words were recorded by this singer with song No. 54, but in that instance are not transcribed. Sitting Rabbit recorded the same melody, with these slightly different words: *Matse'naye mare'wĭts, ma'kure'wĭts*, meaning, "If it is a man I will pursue him."

No. 96. "I Will Pursue Him" (Catalogue No. 851)

Recorded by HOLDING EAGLE



WORDS (HIDATSA)

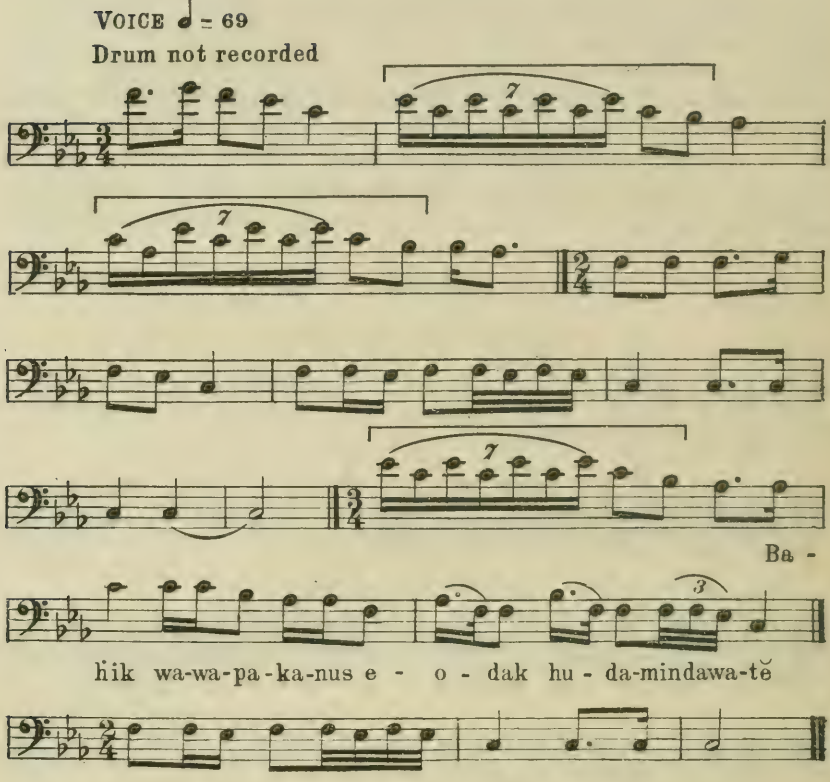
matse'ruk	if a man
mare'wĭts	I will go
ma'kure'wĭts	I will pursue him

Analysis.—More than half the intervals in this song are fourths. The melody has a compass of 11 tones and a steadily descending trend. It is not rhythmic in character. Other songs containing syncopations are noted in the analysis of No. 1.

The words of this song suggest that the enemy was reluctant to come and fight the Mandan (cf. words of No. 91).

No. 97. "The Hated Enemy" (Catalogue No. 866)

Recorded by WOUNDED FACE



WORDS (MANDAN)

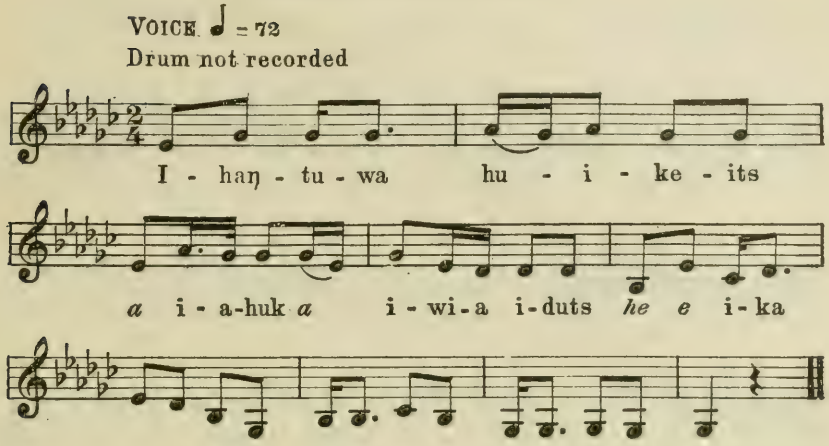
ba'ĥik	the hated enemy
wawapa'kanus	stubborn
e'odak	he
hu'dami 'dawatĕ	is coming

Analysis.—The rhythmic unit in this song is interesting, as it contains small count divisions repeated with accuracy. In tonality the song is minor, containing all the tones of the octave except the second. Progression is chiefly by thirds and major seconds.

No. 98. "The Sioux Come"

(Catalogue No. 882)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (HIDATSA)

Ihaŋ'tuwa	the Teton Sioux
hu'ike'its	come (a word expressing contempt)
i'ahuk	and many of them,
i'wiä	they weep
iduts'	continually,
i'ka	behold them

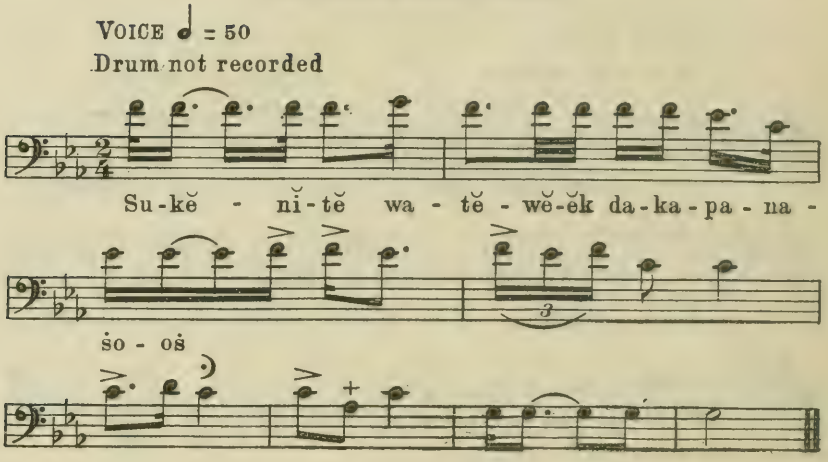
Analysis.—This interesting melody comprises two parts, each containing four measures. The opening measures of the second part were strongly accented. The melody lies partly above and partly below the keynote and progresses chiefly by whole tones. It contains the complete octave except the seventh and is melodic in structure.

This song refers to the custom of "counting coup" by striking an enemy. The final word signifies "to beat or whip with a stick," not simply to strike the enemy.

No. 99. "What Was It You Struck?"

(Catalogue No. 862)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (MANDAN)

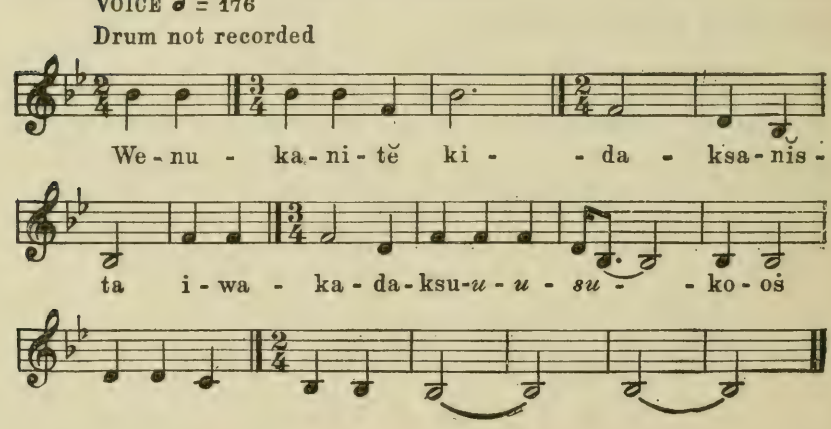
su'kĕnĭtĕ' _____children
watĕ'wĕĕk_____what was it
da'kapanaśoöś'_____you struck?

Analysis.—In common with a majority of these war songs, the present melody has an upward progression as its first interval. The most frequent interval is the minor third, yet the song has a wide melodic trend. No rhythmic unit occurs, but the count-divisions of the fifth and seventh measures give a rhythmic vigor to the song.

The following war song was used by members of the Dog Society:

No. 100. "I Do Not Fear" (Catalogue No. 879)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (MANDAN)

wenu'kanitĕ' ---------- my comrades
ki'daksanĭs'ta ---------- fighting
i'wakada'ksukoŏš' ---------- I do not fear

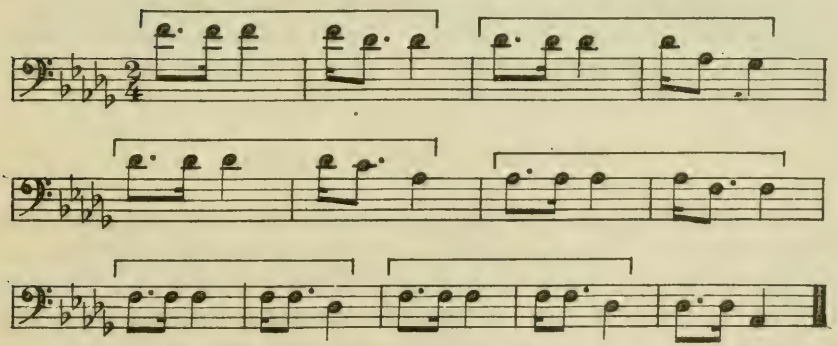
Analysis.—The tempo of this song is unusually rapid and, like many other war songs of this series, it has a wide melodic range. It is harmonic in structure and extends from the octave downward to the keynote. A majority of these war songs are harmonic in structure. This song is not rhythmic in character and contains only the tones of the major triad and second.

It is said that the words of the following song were not composed for use at a scalp dance. The words had their origin in the lodge of one of the societies many years ago. A relative of Old Dog's father played a joke on him, and Old Dog's father craftily "got the best of him." The incident was greatly appreciated by the members of the society, who "made a song" about it. Later the song was used in the scalp dances. The words were recorded by two singers, each of whom used them with a different melody. This indicates the pleasure that the Indians take in an encounter of wit, especially between relatives.

No. 101. "You are Foolish" (Catalogue No. 908)

Recorded by HARRY EATON

VOICE ♩ = 116
DRUM ♩ - 108
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 50



WORDS (HIDATSA, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

ni ---------- you (are)
madanulipa'ka ---------- my relative
sa ---------- but
ni ---------- you
maru'lĭtawa ---------- are foolish
gu'šawats ---------- that is why I did so

Analysis.—The rhythmic unit of this song is simple and, except for a closing measure, is continuously repeated, the melody descending in this rhythm from the highest to the lowest tone of its compass. The tempo of the drum is slightly slower than that of the voice. The second and sixth tones of the octave are lacking in the song, which is harmonic in structure.

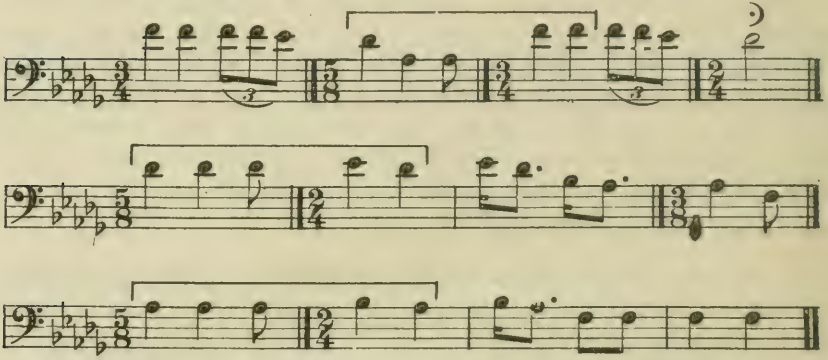
No. 102. War Song (Catalogue No. 889)

Recorded by OLD DOG

VOICE ♩ = 92 (♪ = 184)

DRUM ♩ = 92

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 32



Analysis.—Of the 19 progressions in this song 17 are whole tones and minor thirds, the remaining two intervals being a minor sixth and a fourth. The drumbeat is in eighth note values continuing steadily through the 3–8 and 5–8 measures. Two renditions were recorded, and in both renditions the tempo of the 5–8 measures was accurate. The melodic tones are those of the fourth five-toned scale.

MISCELLANEOUS SONGS

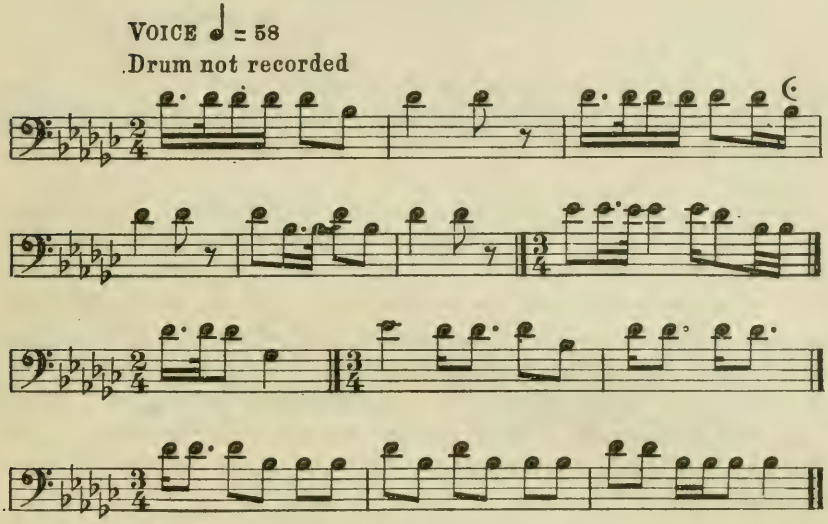
The songs comprised in this group, like many of the war and society songs, can not be definitely ascribed to either the Mandan or Hidatsa tribes. In some instances a song was recorded by a Mandan and verified by an Hidatsa, while, as in preceding groups, some songs undoubtedly originated in one tribe and were sung with words of the other language.

The first two songs were sung to children. No. 103 was recorded by both Wolf Head and Scattered Corn (Mandan), the melody being practically the same, but the words slightly different in the latter portion. The transcription is from Wolf Head's rendition,

and the words (not transcribed) are those given by Scattered Corn. The words resemble those of the "game of silence" recorded among the Chippewa (Bull. 53, Bur. Amer. Ethn., p. 303), in which the situations were made as exciting as possible and a fine imposed on the child who laughed when the song suddenly ceased. Both sets of words mention a trail and a journey. In the Chippewa song a fat pig is hanging in a tree, while in the Mandan song a buffalo calf is "lying up high." A resemblance between the folk tale of the turtle who went to war, as recorded among the Chippewa and the Mandan, is noted in footnote on page 89.

No. 103. "Whose Track Is It?" (Catalogue No. 982)

Recorded by WOLF HEAD



WORDS (MANDAN, NOT TRANSCRIBED)

de′makĕ.....that
de′makĕ.....that
tewĕ′.....whose
oni′deška.....track is it like?
tatĕ′hi.....grandfather
hi′nups.....two-teeth (beaver)
oni′deška.....it is like his track
uŋ′šaki.....if it is
a′sidata.....follow it on
ti′šohe′nawehik.....the man came to a wigwam
ti′kaboš′boš.....pounded the wigwam
we′šido daši′šik.....with worn-out feet
ta′wido′kehi′hik.....with a wriggled (twisted) bag
a′kita.....up high

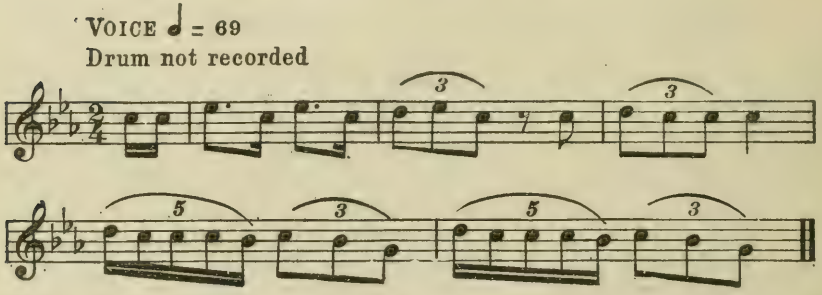
wedo'ĥikadepe'na.....lay a big, fat
hu'hamak ni'kasi.....young buffalo calf
dĕ'ptaśedo'sedo.....with a soft belly-button
ma'na.....walking
wo'daśkiśki.....crumbling sticks
do'ki.....crab shells
wena'ĥipapa.....have a dance
ista'.....he
ka'daĥuŋk'tka.....knocked his eye out

Analysis.—The several renditions of this song were alike in rhythm but wavering in intonation. It has been noted frequently that the rhythm of a song is repeated with more accuracy than the intervals if the singer is not proficient. In this instance the singer was an aged man who had never been considered a particularly good singer, but who knew the old songs of his tribe. Minor thirds comprise 19 of the 34 intervals. Only two intervals larger than these occur in the song, which has a compass of only six tones. It is interesting to note that the accented tone in the first five and in the last four measures is D, while the intervening measures show an alternation of accented D and E.

The native words of this song to a little child were recorded and are freely transcribed as follows: "'I want to keep you, little fox,' she said. The little fox said, 'It is not right that you want to keep me.' She said, 'You are my little baby.'" As an interesting comparison with this song we note another song which is not transcribed but contains the words (freely translated): "Fox, cut your foot, keep on lifting one after another." The word translated "cut" means "to chop or cut with a blow," and the song, which was sung to little children, may have been intended to encourage the child in the use of its feet.

No. 104. Song to a Little Child (Catalogue No. 901)

Recorded by LEADING ONE



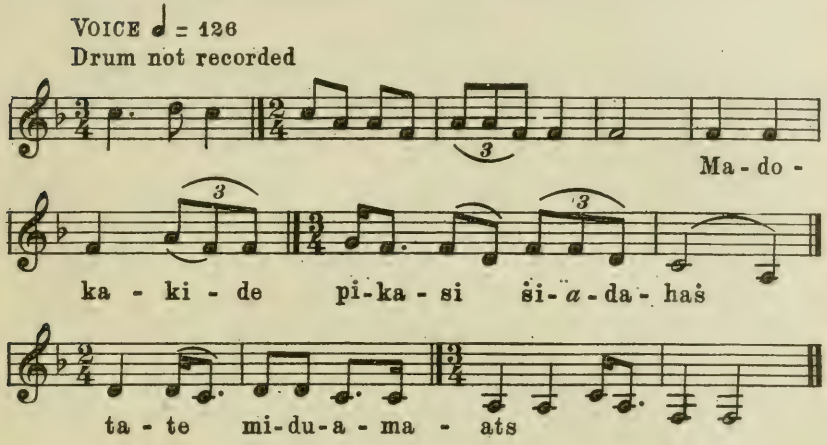
Analysis.—The first portion of this song comprises three complete measures and is broken by a rest. This portion is somewhat lively

in rhythm and progressions, while the second portion is quiet and soothing in character. We may trace a correspondence between the music and words of the two parts, the first being the words of the mother and the second the reply of the child. The song has a range of six tones and progresses chiefly by whole tones.

This was said to be "a very old medicine song which originated with a man who saw an elk in a dream." No further information could be secured concerning it. (Cf. elk dreams and songs among the Sioux, Bull. 61, Bur. Amer. Ethn., pp. 176–179.)

No. 105. Song of an Elk Dream (Catalogue No. 883)

Recorded by CROW'S HEART



WORDS (HIDATSA)

mado'kakide	elk hunt
pi'kasi	(?)
šiä'dahaš'	he said
ta'te	father
miduä'maäts	I go to shoot

Analysis.—This song contains only one interval larger than a major third. The major triad is prominent in its progressions, but the song is analyzed as melodic with harmonic framework. It has a compass of 12 tones and is based on the fourth five-toned scale.

The words of the following song are freely translated. The general idea is that the comrade's whole life had changed since he married and that the singer, without expressing too much, desired to indicate his sympathy and understanding.

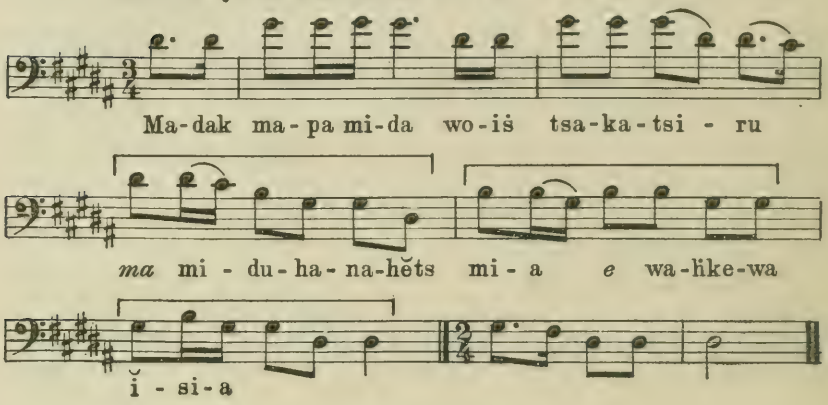
No. 106. "We Made Fire" (Catalogue No. 898)

Recorded by BUTTERFLY

VOICE ♩ = 80

DRUM ♩ = 80

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 32



WORDS (HIDATSA)

madak'_____comrade
mapa' mi'da awo'iś[1]_____in the daytime when we made fire
tsaka'tsiru_____it was pleasant
mi'duhana'hĕts mi'a_____
waĭke'wa ĭsi'a_____} I understand women

Analysis.—This song is harmonic in structure and is based on the second five-toned scale. It has a compass of 11 tones and is strongly descending in trend, two-thirds of the progressions being downward. The major third does not occur, the fourth and minor third being equal and each comprising about one-third of the total number of intervals.

In explanation of the following song Bear-on-the-flat said that a mountain band of Hidatsa once joined themselves to the Mandan. These people were called Awaha'wi, meaning "earth many pointed." The song is about a woman of this band. Her husband was killed by the Sioux. The members of the society to which he belonged were all regarded as "brothers," and when the term of her widowhood had passed they wanted to marry her, but she refused them, saying, "You are not men; my husband was a brave man." Finally she married a man named Coyote, who was the weakest and poorest of them all. As soon as the others knew of this they made a song about her, and wherever the couple went someone was sure to start this song.

[1] The first syllable of this word was omitted by the singer.

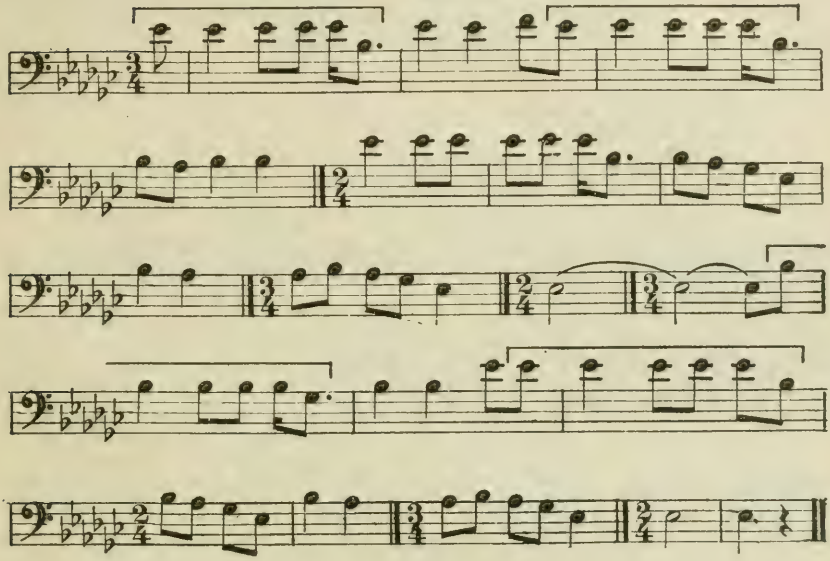
No. 107. Song of Derision (Catalogue No. 839)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT

VOICE ♩ = 76

DRUM ♩ = 76

Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



WORDS (HIDATSA)

o'nape matse' ne'šits_____you said there are no men
Wo'tsaš_____Coyote (the final *s* indicates this is a man's name)
matse'_____a man
gu'wa'_____is he?

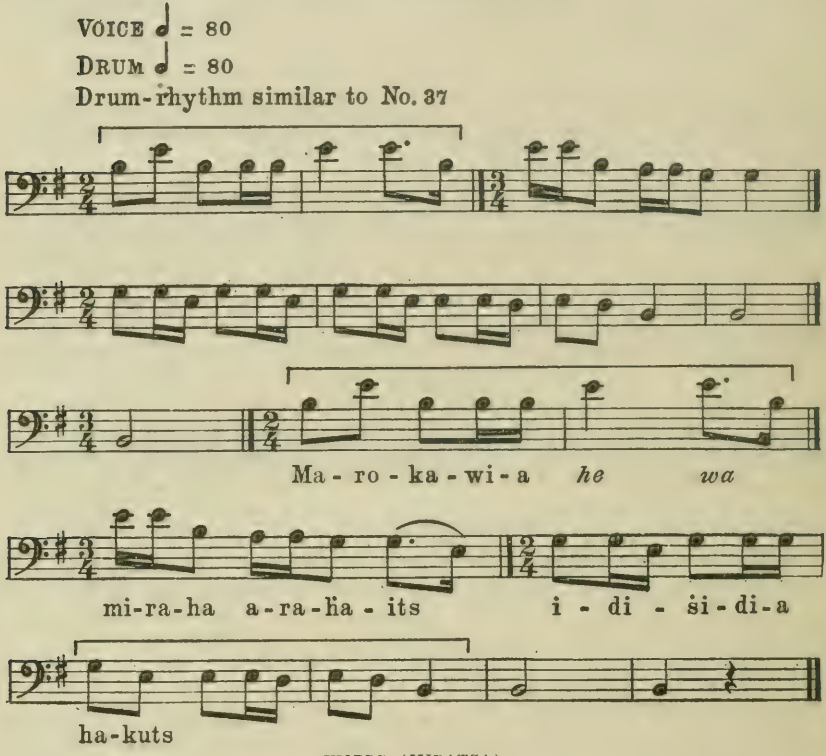
Analysis.—In the three renditions of this song the rhythm was steadily maintained. Except for the accented A, occurring twice, the song would be considered harmonic in structure. Attention is directed to the fifth and sixth measures, in which the rhythmic unit occurs with an additional count, and to the sixth measure from the end of the song, in which the last count of the rhythmic unit is evenly divided. Such variations in the rhythmic unit give a certain "swing" to the song as a whole. The song contains all the tones of the octave except the sixth and seventh. About two-thirds of the progressions are downward, this being a proportion frequently noted in the Indian songs that have been analyzed. Cf. Nos. 18 and 93, which also contain the idea of derision.

Another song of the mountain band of Hidatsa is said to have been sung at one of their dancing societies. It is said there was

among them a woman named Elk Woman, who had only earthen pots. One day she was cooking corn mush in an earthern pot and it was boiling dry, so she went for more water. On the way she met a man and forgot the food, which was entirely spoiled. The following song was composed about this incident.

No. 108. "The Kettle is Burning" (Catalogue No. 840)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT



WORDS (HIDATSA)

Ma'rokawi'a_____ Elk Woman
mira'ha_____ the kettle
ara'haïts_____ is burning
indiši'diä hakuts'_____ (free translation) you said, "I am afraid"

Analysis.—This song contains the tones of the second five-toned scale and is harmonic in structure. The interval of a fourth is prominent and comprises about one-third of the entire number of progressions. With the exception of an ascending octave the remaining intervals are thirds. The rhythmic unit was sung with clearness in the several renditions of the song and is slightly changed in its last occurrence.

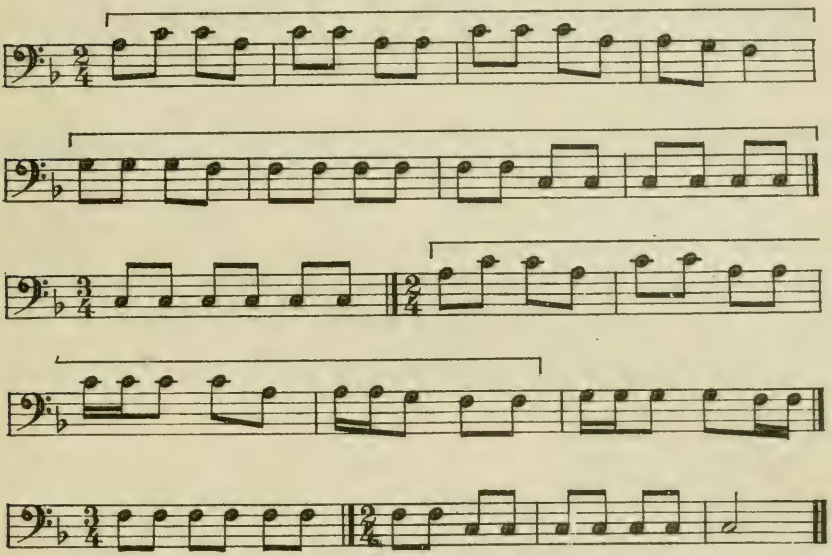
Bear-on-the-flat said that the words of this song were freely translated as follows: "That chief, I coveted his youngest wife. I must meet her on the sly." It was said that the chief had several wives and that when the tribe was on the hunt the youngest wife indulged in a flirtation with another man. This caused the following song to be sung.

No. 109. "The Youngest Wife of the Chief"

(Catalogue No. 841)

Recorded by BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT

VOICE ♩ = 76
DRUM ♩ = 76
Drum-rhythm similar to No. 37



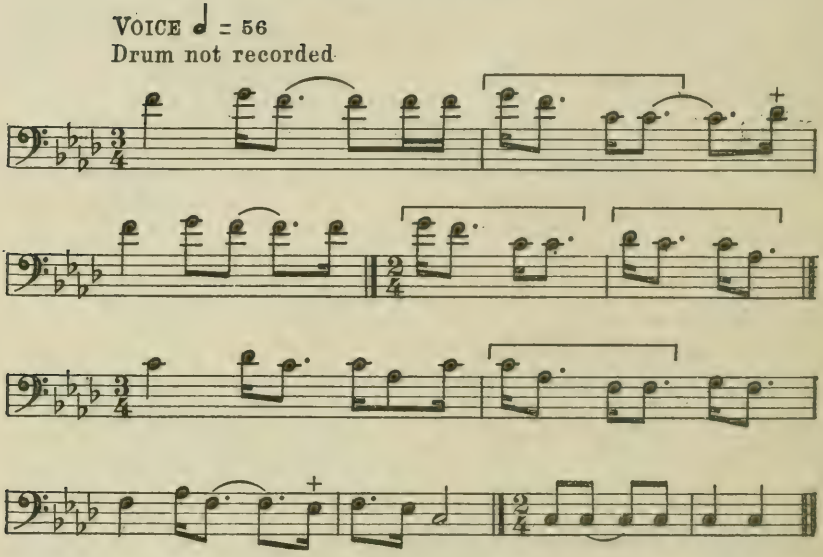
Analysis.—This melody is major in tonality, yet more than half the intervals are minor thirds. In some renditions the words occur in the third appearance of the rhythmic unit, slightly changing the note values. The only melody tones are those of the major triad and second. Voice and drum have the same metric unit, the beat of the drum being in unaccented quarter-note values.

One of the pleasing customs of village life was the singing on the roofs of the lodges. This usually took place in the evening when many persons were sitting on the roofs. Good Bear, who recorded the following song, died in 1918, before the collecting of the present material was completed.

No. 110. Song on the Roof of the Lodge

(Catalogue No. 900)

Recorded by GOOD BEAR



Analysis.—This song is melodic in structure and has a compass of 12 tones. Almost half the progressions are whole tones, although five progressions of a semitone occur in the melody. The rhythmic unit is short and its characteristic count-divisions appear in other parts of the song. The tones marked + were slightly sharped in all the renditions. Other songs containing syncopations are noted in the analysis of No. 1.

The following lists comprise the serial numbers of songs, according to their classifications in the tables on pages 16–26.

MELODIC ANALYSIS

TABLE 1.—TONALITY

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Major tonality	1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 21, 24, 25, 26, 29, 30, 33, 36, 37, 39, 41, 42, 44, 46, 47, 48, 50, 51, 53, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 75, 76, 80, 81, 83, 84, 89, 90, 93, 94, 95, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 105, 107.	65	*59*
Minor tonality	4, 6, 9, 10, 12, 20, 22, 23, 27, 28, 31, 32, 34, 35, 38, 40, 43, 45, 52, 54, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 72, 74, 77, 78, 79, 82, 85, 86, 87, 88, 91, 97, 98, 104, 106, 108, 109, 110.	43	*39*
Third lacking	49, 92	2	*2*
Total		110	.....

Melodic Analysis—Continued

TABLE 2.—FIRST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO KEYNOTE

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Beginning on the—			
Twelfth	6, 14, 39, 105	4	3
Eleventh	46, 97	2	2
Tenth	7, 73	2	2
Octave	4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 16, 20, 22, 28, 35, 36, 41, 42, 44, 47, 50, 55, 57, 58, 64, 65, 71, 78, 80, 81, 83, 84, 86, 88, 94, 100, 108, 110.	34	31
Seventh	2, 18, 31, 54	4	3
Sixth	33, 82, 99	3	3
Fifth	13, 15, 17, 19, 25, 26, 32, 40, 43, 60, 61, 62, 63, 67, 72, 74, 77, 79, 87, 93, 96, 103, 106, 109.	24	22
Fourth	91, 98	2	2
Third	1, 3, 21, 27, 34, 37, 48, 51, 52, 53, 59, 66, 68, 75, 76, 89, 95, 102, 107	19	17
Second	24, 30	2	2
Keynote	12, 23, 29, 38, 45, 49, 56, 69, 70, 85, 90, 92, 101, 104	14	12
Total		110	.....

TABLE 3.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO KEYNOTE

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Ending on the—			
Sixth	34	1	1
Fifth	4, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 15, 17, 19, 20, 24, 27, 29, 30, 32, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 43, 49, 54, 57, 60, 61, 62, 63, 67, 69, 72, 74, 77, 80, 82, 84, 85, 86, 88, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 98, 101, 104, 106, 107, 109, 110.	51	47
Third	3, 21, 33, 36, 51, 53, 56, 59, 66, 68, 75, 76, 79, 89, 90, 102, 103	17	15
Keynote	1, 2, 5, 6, 7, 11, 14, 16, 18, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 31, 35, 39, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 50, 52, 55, 58, 64, 65, 70, 71, 73, 78, 81, 83, 87, 94, 97, 99, 100, 105, 108.	41	37
Total		110	.....

TABLE 4.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO COMPASS OF SONG

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Songs in which final tone is—			
Lowest tone in song	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, 35, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110.	101	92
Immediately preceded by—			
Fourth below	34	1	1
Semitone below	30, 67	2	2
Fourth below with fourth below in previous measure.	55	1	1

Melodic Analysis—Continued

TABLE 4.—LAST NOTE OF SONG—ITS RELATION TO COMPASS OF SONG—Continued

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—			
Fourth below the final tone.	83	1	1
Major third below the final tone.	36, 103	2	2
Whole tone below the final tone.	92	1	1
Semitone below the final tone.	1	1	1
Total		110	

TABLE 5.—NUMBER OF TONES COMPRISING COMPASS OF SONG

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Fourteen tones	59	1	1
Thirteen tones	9, 10, 36, 39, 60, 101	6	5
Twelve tones	6, 14, 17, 41, 52, 55, 57, 67, 84, 97, 105, 110	12	11
Eleven tones	4, 8, 20, 32, 33, 40, 42, 46, 54, 61, 63, 64, 65, 74, 76, 80, 86, 88, 89, 95, 96, 106, 109.	23	21
Ten tones	3, 7, 21, 44, 51, 53, 58, 66, 73, 78, 79, 81, 83, 94	14	12
Nine tones	13, 50, 62, 71, 82, 91, 108	7	6
Eight tones	5, 11, 15, 16, 19, 22, 23, 28, 29, 30, 35, 37, 43, 47, 56, 68, 69, 72, 75, 77, 90, 93, 98, 99, 100, 102, 107.	27	25
Seven tones	2, 12, 18, 31, 34, 38	6	5
Six tones	1, 27, 85, 103, 104	5	4
Five tones	24, 25, 26, 45, 48, 49, 70, 87, 92	9	8
Total		110	

TABLE 6.—TONE MATERIAL

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Second five-toned scale	9, 63, 67, 106, 109	5	4
Fourth five-toned scale	8, 13, 17, 24, 29, 33, 37, 41, 51, 53, 62, 68, 73, 76, 81, 83, 89, 94, 102, 105.	20	18
Major triad	19, 25, 26	3	3
Major triad and seventh	61	1	1
Major triad and sixth	11, 36, 39, 103	4	3
Major triad and fourth	45, 46, 96	3	3
Major triad and second	7, 42, 47, 55, 56, 58, 80, 93, 100, 107	10	9
Minor triad	27	1	1
Minor triad and seventh	12, 20, 28, 32, 34, 40, 65, 79	8	7
Minor triad and sixth	43	1	1
Minor triad and fourth	6, 23, 77, 85, 86, 87	6	5
Octave complete	1, 30, 31, 54	4	3
Octave complete except seventh.	5, 21, 35, 44, 60, 75, 95, 98, 99	9	8

Melodic Analysis—Continued

Table 6.—TONE MATERIAL—Continued

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Octave complete except seventh and sixth.	15, 22, 48, 69, 70, 71, 72, 84, 108	9	8
Octave complete except seventh and fourth.	88	1	1
Octave complete except seventh, third, and second.	92	1	1
Octave complete except seventh and second.	16, 91	2	2
Octave complete except sixth.	10, 14, 50, 64	4	3
Octave complete except sixth and fourth.	104	1	1
Octave complete except sixth and second.	66, 74, 101	3	3
Octave complete except fourth.	2, 3, 57, 78, 90, 110	6	5
Octave complete except fourth and second.	18, 59, 82	3	3
Octave complete except second.	4, 38, 52, 97	4	3
First, second, and fifth tones.	49	1	1
Total		110	.....

Table 7.—ACCIDENTALS

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—			
No accidentals	2, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 49, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 83, 84, 85, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110.	89	88
Seventh raised a semitone.	12, 34, 40, 65, 79, 80	6	5
Sixth raised a semitone.	4	1	1
Fourth raised a semitone.	21, 30, 48, 64, 69	5	4
Third raised a semitone.	86	1	1
Second raised a semitone.	81, 82	2	2
Seventh and fourth raised a semitone.	66, 67	2	2
Seventh lowered a semitone.	1, 3, 50	3	3
Sixth lowered a semitone.	8	1	1
Total		110	.....

Melodic Analysis—Continued

TABLE 8.—STRUCTURE

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Melodic	1, 10, 18, 29, 30, 31, 35, 36, 38, 45, 46, 51, 55, 57, 68, 72, 75, 82, 84, 85, 88, 89, 92, 93, 96, 97, 98, 99, 102, 104, 110.	31	28
Melodic with harmonic framework.	2, 3, 5, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 16, 17, 21, 22, 23, 24, 28, 33, 41, 42, 43, 44, 47, 48, 49, 50, 54, 62, 64, 66, 69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 76, 79, 80, 83, 86, 90, 94, 103, 105, 107, 108.	44	40
Harmonic	4, 6, 7, 14, 15, 19, 20, 25, 26, 27, 32, 34, 37, 39, 40, 52, 53, 56, 58, 59, 60, 61, 63, 65, 67, 77, 78, 81, 87, 91, 95, 100, 101, 106, 109.	35	32
Total		110	.....

TABLE 9.—FIRST PROGRESSION—DOWNWARD AND UPWARD

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Downward	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 22, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 31, 33, 34, 35, 36, 39, 42, 43, 46, 47, 48, 60, 64, 65, 66, 68, 72, 73, 75, 77, 79, 80, 82, 86, 87, 88, 92, 93, 100, 101, 102, 103, 107, 108.	56	51
Upward	9, 10, 12, 17, 21, 23, 29, 30, 32, 37, 38, 40, 41, 44, 45, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 61, 62, 63, 67, 69, 70, 71, 74, 76, 78, 81, 83, 84, 85, 89, 90, 91, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 104, 105, 106, 109, 110.	54	49
Total		110	.....

TABLE 10.—TOTAL NUMBER OF PROGRESSIONS—DOWNWARD AND UPWARD

Downward	1,733
Upward	1,038
Total	2,771

TABLE 11.—INTERVALS IN DOWNWARD PROGRESSION

Intervals of a—		Intervals of a—	
Minor sixth	5	Augmented second	2
Fifth	10	Major second	612
Fourth	239	Minor second	92
Major third	206		
Minor third	567	Total	1,733

TABLE 12.—INTERVALS IN UPWARD PROGRESSION

Intervals of a—		Intervals of a—	
Tenth	3	Major third	123
Octave	14	Minor third	281
Seventh	2	Major second	256
Major sixth	14	Minor second	42
Minor sixth	20		
Fifth	50	Total	1,038
Fourth	233		

Melodic Analysis—Continued

Table 13.—AVERAGE NUMBER OF SEMITONES IN AN INTERVAL

Total number of intervals	2,771
Total number of semitones	9,080
Average number of semitones in an interval	3

Rhythmic Analysis

Table 14.—PART OF MEASURE ON WHICH SONG BEGINS

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Beginning on unaccented part of measure.	5, 9, 12, 15, 16, 17, 23, 24, 27, 30, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 40, 44, 46, 48, 49, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 60, 61, 65, 66, 67, 68, 75, 77, 81, 83, 84, 87, 88, 90, 94, 95, 96, 104, 106, 108.	47	*43*
Beginning on accented part of measure.	1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 25, 26, 28, 29, 31, 39, 41, 42, 43, 45, 47, 51, 56, 57, 58, 59, 62, 63, 64, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 76, 78, 79, 80, 82, 85, 86, 89, 91, 92, 93, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 105, 107, 109, 110.	63	*57*
Total		110	.....

Table 15.—RHYTHM (METER) OF FIRST MEASURE

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
First measure in—			
2–4 time	2, 5, 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 21, 22, 30, 31, 34, 35, 38, 40, 41, 45, 46, 48, 49, 51, 52, 55, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 68, 72, 73, 74, 76, 77, 78, 81, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 90, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 98, 99, 100, 101, 103, 104, 107, 109.	61	*55*
3–4 time	1, 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 13, 19, 20, 23, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 32, 33, 36, 37, 39, 42, 43, 47, 50, 53, 54, 56, 57, 65, 66, 67, 69, 70, 71, 75, 79, 80, 84, 88, 89, 94, 97, 102, 105, 106, 108, 110.	47	*45*
5–8 time	44	1	*1*
7–8 time	24	1	*1*
Total		110	.....

Table 16.—CHANGE OF TIME (MEASURE-LENGTHS)

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Songs containing no change of time.	3, 5, 11, 17, 35, 36, 41, 44, 49, 50, 57, 62, 87, 88, 95, 98, 99, 101, 104, 106.	20	*18*
Songs containing a change of time.	1, 2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 40, 42, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, 59, 60, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 96, 97, 100, 102, 103, 105, 107, 108, 109, 110.	90	*82*
Total		110	.....

Rhythmic Analysis—Continued

TABLE 17.—RHYTHMIC UNIT OF SONG

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Songs containing—			
No rhythmic unit	4, 6, 8, 12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 22, 34, 35, 37, 51, 52, 59, 74, 78, 79, 81, 83, 84, 85, 87, 88, 89, 95, 96, 98, 99, 100, 103, 104, 105.	33	30
One rhythmic unit	1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 17, 19, 20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 36, 38, 40, 41, 42, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 53, 54, 55, 56, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67, 69, 72, 73, 75, 76, 77, 80, 82, 86, 91, 92, 93, 94, 97, 101, 102, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110.	66	60
Two rhythmic units	23, 29, 39, 43, 46, 57, 64, 70, 90	9	8
Three rhythmic units	68, 71	2	2
Total		110	

TABLE 18.—RHYTHM OF DRUM

	Serial numbers of songs	Number	Per cent
Sixteenth notes unaccented	2	1	1
Eighth notes unaccented	32, 44, 51, 65, 66, 67, 79, 83, 86, 88, 91, 102, 106	13	11
Quarter notes unaccented	37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 47, 48, 49, 55, 68, 69, 70, 75, 92, 93, 107, 108, 109.	19	17
Half notes unaccented	5	1	1
Eighth notes accented in groups of two.	31, 71	2	2
Each beat preceded by an unaccented beat corresponding to the third count of triplet.	50, 58, 59, 60, 76, 90, 101	7	6
Two drumbeats in triple measure.	3	1	1
Drum not recorded	1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 45, 46, 52, 53, 54, 56, 57, 61, 62, 63, 64, 72, 73, 74, 77, 78, 80, 81, 82, 84, 85, 87, 89, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 103, 104, 105, 110.	66	60
Total		110	

AUTHORITIES CITED

Boller, Henry A. Among the Indians. Eight years in the Far West: 1858–1866. Phila., 1868.

Bradbury, John. Travels in the interior of America. Thwaites, Early Western Travels, vol. v. Cleveland, 1904.

Catlin, George C. Manners, customs, and condition of the North American Indians. Vols. i–ii. London, 1841.

——— O-kee-pa; a religious ceremony. London, 1867.

Curtis, Edward S. The North American Indian. Vol. iv. Cambridge, 1909.

Densmore, Frances. Chippewa music. Bur. Amer. Ethn., Bull. 45. Washington, 1910.

——— Chippewa music—II. Ibid., Bull. 53, 1913.

——— Teton Sioux music. Ibid., Bull. 61, 1918.

——— Northern Ute music. Ibid., Bull. 75, 1922.

Fletcher, Alice C., *and* La Flesche, Francis. The Omaha tribe. Twenty-seventh Ann. Rept. Bur. Amer. Ethn., Washington, 1911.

Fox Strangways, A. H. The music of Hindostan. Oxford, 1914.

Grinnell, George Bird. Blackfoot lodge tales. New York, 1892.

Helmholtz, Hermann L. F. On the sensations of tone as a physiological basis for the theory of music. 2d English ed. Trans. by Alexander J. Ellis. London, 1885.

Kappler, Charles J., *ed.* Indian Affairs. Laws and Treaties. Vol. i (Laws). Vol. ii (Treaties). Washington, 1903.

Kroeber, A. L. Gros Ventre myths and tales. Anthrop. Papers Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. i, pt. 3. New York, 1908.

La Verendrye [Gaultier Varennes]. Journal of La Verendrye, 1738–39. (Report on Canadian Archives, 1889, pp. 3–29, Ottawa, 1890.)

Lowie, Robert H. Societies of the Hidatsa and Mandan Indians. Anthrop. Papers Am. Mus. Nat. Hist., vol. xi, pt. 3, pp. 219–358. New York, 1916.

——— Notes on the social organization and customs of the Mandan, Hidatsa, and Crow Indians. Ibid., vol. xxi, pt. 1, pp. 1–99. New York, 1917.

Matthews, Washington. Ethnography and philology of the Hidatsa Indians. U. S. Geol. and Geog. Surv., Misc. Pubs., no. 7. Washington, 1877.

Maximilian [Alexander Philip]. Prince of Wied. Travels in the interior of North America. Parts i–iii. Thwaites, Early Western Travels, vols. xxii, xxiii, xxiv. Cleveland, 1906.

Pepper, George H., *and* Wilson, Gilbert L. An Hidatsa shrine and the beliefs respecting it. Mem. Am. Anthrop. Asso., vol. ii, pt. 4, pp. 275–328. Lancaster, Pa., 1908.

Royce, Charles C. Indian land cessions in the United States. Introduction by Cyrus Thomas. Eighteenth Ann. Rept. Bur. Amer. Ethn., pt. 2. Washington, 1899.

U. S. Department of the Interior. Report of the Secretary of the Interior. Washington, 1864. (H. R. Ex. Docs. no. 1, 38th Cong., 2d sess., 1864–65. Washington, 1865.)

U. S. Department of the Interior. Report of the Secretary of the Interior. Part II, Indian Affairs. Washington, 1867. (H. R. Ex. Docs., vol. III, no. 1, 40th Cong., 2d sess., 1867–68. Washington, 1868.)

——— Report of the Secretary of the Interior. Vol. I. Washington, 1872. (H. R. Ex. Docs., no. 1, pt. 5, 42d Cong., 3d sess., 1872–73. Washington, 1873.)

——— Report of the Secretary of the Interior. Vol. I. Washington, 1875. (H. R. Ex. Docs., no. 1, pt. 5, 44th Cong., 1st sess., 1874–75. Washington, 1875.)

——— Report of the Secretary of the Interior. Vol. I. Washington, 1877. (H. R. Ex. Docs., no. 1, pt. 5, 45th Cong., 2d sess., 1877–78. Washington, 1878.)

——— Report of the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, 1917–18. Washington, 1918.

Will, George F., *and* Hyde, George E. Corn among the Indians of the Upper Missouri. St. Louis, 1917.

Will, G. F., *and* Spinden, H. J. The Mandans. A study of their culture, archaeology, and language. Papers Peabody Mus., vol. III, no. 4. Cambridge, 1906.

Wilson, Gilbert L. Agriculture of the Hidatsa Indians. Univ. Minn., Studies in Soc. Sci., no. 9. Minneapolis, 1917.

INDEX

Page.

ACCIDENTALS, table showing 20-21, 28, 181
AGRICULTURE 3, 4, 11-12, 13, 52, 53
See CORN.
ALDEN, E. H., report by 13
AMASHI, Crow name for the Hidatsa 2
ANALYSES, summary of 31, 33
ANALYSIS OF SONGS 15
tabulated 16-26
ANIMALS, songs received from 32, 41, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 86, 88, 89, 90, 98
ARICARA. *See* ARIKARA.
ARIKARA—
early home of 4
singing of 7
"ARK" OF THE MANDAN 5
BAD EAR, an Hidatsa society 108
BAIT, song when preparing 77
BALL, game of, played by women 81
BEAR, song of 104
BEAR-ON-THE-FLAT—
an informant 97, 110-111
legends related by 84
songs recorded by 130, 141, 142, 150, 151, 164, 175, 176, 177
BENSON, BEN—
a singer 1
information furnished by 61
legend related by 80
narrative given by 64
songs recorded by 13, 127, 128, 143, 144
BLACKBIRDS, song connected with 54
BLACK MOUTH SOCIETY—
a Mandan society 108
age of members of 112
an Hidatsa society 108
duty of 47
functions of 35
insigna of 47
meeting of 48-49
origin of name 47
rattle used by 8
society of warriors 47
songs of 49-52
BLACK TONGUE, a medicine man 38, 59
songs learned from 57
BLACK WOLF, story of 64-69
BOY'S SOCIETIES, admission to 110
BRUSH SHELTER, song when making 74
BUFFALO, song of 70
BUFFALO DANCES, ceremonial purpose of 36
BUFFALO PAUNCH, an Hidatsa Indian 63
BUFFALO SKULL, offerings to the spirit of 65

Page.

BUFFALO SOCIETY—
a Mandan age society 108
age of members of 112
an Hidatsa society 108
headdress of 8, 112
legend of origin of 84
meetings of 112
number of members of 85
purpose of 112
songs of 33, 138-142
war pipe of 9
BULL BOATS, place for storing 5
BULL MEDICINE, a ceremony 36
BURIAL CUSTOMS 5, 6, 122
BUTTERFLY—
an Hidatsa singer 2
death of 147
origin of name of 147
songs recorded by 59, 148, 156, 174
war song of 156
CALUMETS, used in peace negotiations 48
CAPTIVE, song of 42
CARLIN, GEN., treaty due to efforts of 12
CEREMONIES—
of Buffalo dance 36
of Bull Medicine 36
of Little River Women Society 99-107
of purifying the corn 37
of the Goose Women 40
CHILDREN—
game played by 171
songs to 170-172
CHIPPEWA, story recorded among 89
CHIPPEWA SONGS, analysis of 16-26
CHUM, Mandan word for 53, 100
CLAN BROTHER, torture inflicted by 63
CLAN FATHER—
part taken by, in Young Dog Society 110, 111, 113, 114, 116, 122
torture inflicted by 63
COARSE HAIR SOCIETY—
headdress of 110
last of Mandan societies 108
COMMUNAL HOUSE 2, 5
COMPASS OF SONG—
number of tones comprising 18, 27, 80
relation of last note to 17, 27, 179-180
CORN—
arrangement in growing 52
ceremony of purifying 37
guarded by the women 53
importance of 36

CORN—Continued. Page.
means of securing a crop 38, 40
mention of 80, 81, 91, 176
scaffold for drying 2, 4
song concerning 54
song to 59
CORN BALLS, method of making 67
CORN CUSTOMS, songs connected with 12
CORN PRIEST—
duties of 37
office of 36–38
record of 1
song of 45
COUNCIL HOUSE of Old Dog 2
COUP, custom of counting 145, 167
COURTING WHISTLES, types of 9
COYOTE, song of 72, 160
COYOTE AND SKUNK, story of 92
CRAZY DOG—
an Hidatsa society 108
meaning of the term 109
purpose of the society 110
See FOOLISH DOG.
CROW OR RAVEN SOCIETY, age of members 9
CROW'S HEART—
home of, a communal center 2
prominence of 1
songs recorded by 153, 157, 167, 168, 173
story related by 92
CROW'S HEART'S FERRY, origin of the name 2
CROW'S HEART'S LANDING, songs recorded at 13
CUSTER, GEN. G. A., treaty due to efforts of 12
CUSTOMS—
eagle catching 60
singing in the gardens 52
singing on the roof 177
songs connected with 12, 52–80
DANCES—
buffalo, object of 36
of the Little River Women 100
song concerning 51
DANCING BULL, an Hidatsa Indian 63
DANCING SONG 106
of Buffalo Society 141
DEAPOLIS, a Mandan village 99
DEER, song of 88
DERISION, expressed in songs 60, 161–162, 175
DE SMET, P. J., visit of, to Fort Berthold 11
DOG SOCIETY—
rattle of 9
songs of 33, 133–138
war pipe of 9
See FOOLISH DOG; YOUNG DOG.
DOUBLE WHISTLE OR WAR PIPE 9
DREAMS, belief in 148
DRIVER, JAMES—
an Hidatsa singer 2
song recorded by 132
DRUMBEAT, variations of, among tribes 31
DRUMMING STICK, described 41
DRUMS 8
of Goose Women Society 40
rhythm of 30
used in societies 112
DWELLINGS. *See* COMMUNAL HOUSE; EARTH LODGE; LODGES.

EAGLE— Page.
black, song of 71
burial of body of 60, 64
offerings to spirit of 64
EAGLE CATCHING—
camp for 61
description of 60
songs concerning 13, 32
story of origin of 64–69
tribes practicing 60
EAGLE NOSE PEAK, myth concerning 97
EAGLE TRAP—
description of 62
making of 61
song when making 76
EARTH, song concerning 50
EARTH LODGE—
of old type 2
of the Mandan 4–5
EATON, HARRY—
member of Fox Society 109
song recorded by 169
ELBOWOODS, songs recorded at 13
ELK DREAM, song of 173
ELK WHISTLE—
length of 10
origin of 9
ELK WOMAN, story of 175–176
ENEMIES, song concerning 50
ENEMY SOCIETY 95–96
song of 96
ENVIRONMENT, songs not affected by 31
ETHICAL TEACHINGS, absent from present work 13
FEAST, for the Goose Women 40
FETISH, eagle catcher's 61
FIRST MAN, post representing 72
FIVE-TONED SCALES 28
FLAGEOLET—
called "singing whistle," described 11
legend concerning 80–84
FLYING EAGLE, song of 150, 151
FOOLISH DOG—
a Mandan society 108
age of members of 9
rattle used by 8
songs of 129–132
See CRAZY DOG.
FOOLISH SOLDIER, personal song of 162–163
FORT BERTHOLD, village at 1, 4, 5, 72, 158
FORT BERTHOLD RESERVATION—
boundaries of 11
songs recorded on v
FORT CLARK, Mandan village at 99
FOX SOCIETY—
a Mandan society 108
an Hidatsa society 108
derivation of the name 109
headdress of 109
songs of 33, 121–128, 165
war song of 165
FUNERAL SONG, Fox Society 123
GAMES 81, 171
GARDEN SONGS, a distinct type 32
GARDENS—
care of 53
reference to 5
singing in 32, 52

Page.

GIFTS TO YOUNG DOG SOCIETY 111
GILMORE, MELVIN R., acknowledgment to .. 8, 63
GLAZE ON STONE, method of securing 115
GLISSANDO, use of 14, 31, 80
GOOD BEAR—
  an Hidatsa singer 2
  death of 177
  information furnished by 109
  member of the Fox Society 109
  songs recorded by 121, 178
GOOD FUR ROBE—
  a mythical chief 7, 35
  instructions of 37, 38
  origin of the name 35
  societies organized by 38, 39, 47
GOOSE, song of 78
GOOSE WOMEN SOCIETY—
  autumn feast of 40
  ceremony and meeting of 40–47
  drum used by 8
  functions of 35, 39
  men singing with 40
  origin of 39
  singing of, with Corn Priest 38
GOVERNMENT, U. S., dealings of, with Mandan and Hidatsa 11
GROS VENTRES, name for the Hidatsa 4, 7, 11
GROUSE MEN, a Mandan band 3
HABITATIONS. *See* DWELLINGS.
HALF-SHAVED-HEADS, an Hidatsa society 108
  mark of membership in 110
HALL, DR. C. L.—
  acknowledgment to v
  Mandan translation by 6
HALL, R. D., Mandan translation by 6
HAWLEY, E. H., whistle played by 10
HEAD RATTLE, a mythic chief 35
HEADDRESS—
  of Buffalo Society 85, 112
  of Coarse Hair Society 110
  of Enemy Society 96
  of Little River Women Society 98, 99, 100
  of Stone Hammer Society 114
HEART RIVER, Mandan on 4
HIDATSA TRIBE—
  dwellings of 5
  history of 4
  less distinctive than Mandan 13
  origin of name of 3
HINDOSTAN, reference to music of 14, 26
HOFFMAN, C., an interpreter 97
HOLDING EAGLE, JAMES—
  acknowledgment to v
  an Hidatsa singer 2
  an interpreter 97
  information furnished by 123, 133
  member of Fox Society 109
  songs recorded by 124, 134, 135, 136, 138, 139, 140, 155, 165
"HOLY," analysis of Mandan equivalent for .. 36
HORSE SOCIETY—
  a Mandan age society 108
  songs of 33, 143–144
HUBER, FRED—
  acknowledgment to v
  death of xviii

Page.

HUBER, FRED—Continued
  interpreter ..... xvii, 61
  legend related by 72–73
HUNKPAPA SIOUX, as enemy 151
INDIA, peculiarity in music of 14
INFORMANTS ..... xviii–xix
INTENDED-TO-BE-A-DOG, an Hidatsa society .. 108
INTERVALS—
  in downward progression, tables showing 23, 29, 182
  in upward progression, tables showing 23, 29, 182
IRON EYES, fetish inherited from 61
KEYNOTE—
  relation of first note to 16, 179
  relation of last note to 17, 179
KNIFE RIVER, tribes on 4, 158
KROEBER, A. L., legend recorded by 80
LANCES, of the Fox Society 109
LANGUAGE, HIDATSA—
  preferred for songs 12
  publications in 6
  reference to 61, 97
LANGUAGE, MANDAN—
  in songs 12, 67
  material collected in 97
  name for themselves 3
  practically unwritten xvii
  present use of 1
  publications in 6
  references to 61, 98
LEADING ONE, songs recorded by 158, 159, 160, 161, 163
LEGEND—
  of captive song 41
  of contest between Old Man Coyote and Cedar Post 72
  of origin of Buffalo Society 84
  of origin of flageolet 80–84
  of the black-tailed deer 87–88
  of the Mandan 7
  of the moon and the dancers 86–87
LIBBY, DR. O. J., suggestion by v
LITTLE CROW—
  a singer 1
  death of 1, 56
  mention of 112, 138
  songs recorded by 51, 131, 142
LITTLE RIVER WOMEN SOCIETY—
  age of members 97
  ceremony of 99–100
  origin of 97
  songs of 12, 101–107
LODGES—
  of head drummer 112
  use of tops of 5, 126, 177
  used by men in eagle camp 65
  See EARTH LODGE.
LONELINESS, songs expressing 53, 55, 56, 57
LOVE SONG, Fox Society 126
LOWIE, R. H.—
  song recorded by 96
  tradition related to 47
LUMPWOOD SOCIETY—
  an Hidatsa age society 108
  derivation of the name 108

Page.

MAN WHO MARRIED THE BIRDS, story of..... 90–91
MANDAN—
almost extinct..... 13
appearance of..... 3
history of..... 3
origin of name..... 3
village of, described..... 4–5
MANDAN, N. DAK., mention of..... 97
MAP OF THE EARTH, CEREMONIAL..... 37
destruction of..... 38
MEASURE—
first, rhythm of..... 24, 29, 183
part of, on which song begins..... 24, 29, 183
unaccented part of, as ending of song..... 5
MEDICINE MEN, as rain-makers..... 37–38
MEDICINE SONGS..... 149, 150, 173
MELODY, "plots" showing trend of..... 34
MEN'S SOCIETIES..... 108–144
purpose of..... 47, 110, 112, 113, 114
war pipes of..... 9
MINATAREES, early name of the Hidatsa..... 4, 7
MINITARI, Mandan name for the Hidatsa..... 2
MINT, medicinal use of..... 13
MISSOURI WOMEN, song of..... 103
MOON—
song of..... 87
symbol in decoration..... 115
MORTUARY CUSTOMS. *See* BURIALS.
MOTHER CORN, mention of..... 41
MOVES SLOWLY—
burning of lodge of..... 38
Corn Priest of the Mandan..... 1
father of Scattered Corn..... 1
rattle owned by..... 62
right of, to certain songs..... 37
story related by..... 7
MUSHROOM RATTLES—
ceremonial use of..... 9, 62
loaned by North Dakota Historical Society..... 8
owned by Ben Benson..... 61
MUSIC—
early comments on..... 7–8
not used in treatment of sick..... 12
of India, peculiarity of..... 14
MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS..... xx, 8–11
See DRUM; FLAGEOLET; MUSHROOM RATTLES; RATTLES; WHISTLES.
MYTHOLOGY OF THE MANDAN..... 6–7
NAMES, PROPER..... xix
NECKLACE OF BEAR CLAWS, ceremonial use of..... 99, 100
NORTH DAKOTA HISTORICAL SOCIETY—
acknowledgment to..... v
drum owned by..... 40
rattle owned by..... 8, 62–63
work under auspices of..... 13
NOTATION..... xvi, 26
NOTCHED STICK SOCIETY..... 108
OKEEPA, mention of..... 36
OLD DOG—
an Hidatsa singer..... 2
home of, described..... 2
member of the Fox Society..... 109
songs recorded by..... 123, 146, 149, 170
OLD WOLVERINE—
in charge of eagle camp..... 61
rattles used by..... 62

Page.

"OLD WOMAN," origin of the term..... 72
OLD-WOMAN-WHO-NEVER-DIES—
ceremony in honor of..... 40
legends concerning..... 7
site of home of..... 80
song connected with..... 41
ONE BUFFALO, song belonging to..... 148
ORIGIN MYTH..... 6–7, 35, 72–73
OTTER WOMAN—
reference to..... 38
songs recorded by..... 54, 56, 57, 58, 59, 131
OUACHIPOUANNE, former name of the Mandan..... 3
PACKINEAU, MR., information furnished by..... 114
PAINT, INDIAN, enduring quality of..... 62
PAN—
an Hidatsa singer..... 2
melody played by..... 10
songs recorded by..... 117–120
wand made by..... 115
PEPPERMINT, WILD, ceremonial cleansing with..... 100
PHONETIC KEY..... xvii
PIPE, CEREMONIAL—
destruction of..... 38
made of wood..... 38
mention of..... 37
origin of..... 38–39
used in peace negotiations..... 48
PIPESTONE, RED, use of..... 38
"PLOTS" OF SONGS..... 34–35, 141, 159
used for comparison only..... 15
POPULATION OF THE MANDAN..... 12
POTTERY OF THE MANDAN..... 5
PRAIRIE-HEN PEOPLE, a Mandan band..... 3
"PRAISE" SONGS..... 156–157
PRIEST. *See* CORN PRIEST.
PROGRESSION, FIRST, tables showing..... 22, 29, 182
PROGRESSIONS, table showing total number of..... 22, 29, 182
RAIN, SECURING..... 37, 38, 59, 149
RAT, outline of, as body decoration..... 113
RATTLES—
of the societies..... 48, 112
types of..... 8–9
RAVEN—
skin of, as insignia..... 47
song to the..... 49
RAVEN SOCIETY. *See* CROW SOCIETY.
RAWHIDE LOOP., a mythical chief..... 35
REST—
in Mandan music..... 14
use of, among the tribes..... 31
RHYTHM (METER)—
of drum and rattle..... 25–26, 30, 184
of first measure, tables showing..... 24, 29, 183
RHYTHMIC UNIT—
defined..... 25, 50
in analysis..... 32, 33
tables showing..... 25, 30, 184
RUNNING RABBIT, mention of..... 62
SACRED SONGS OF THE GOOSE WOMEN..... 44, 45
SAGE, ceremonial use of..... 6, 40, 46, 47, 67
SCAFFOLD BURIAL..... 5, 6, 122
SCALP DANCE SONG, WOMAN'S..... 155
SCALPING, customs concerning..... 145

SCALPS— Page.
carried in victory dances 159
displayed on lodges 5
SCATTERED CORN—
material furnished by 1
member of Little River Women Society 97
songs recorded by 44–46, 42, 55, 93, 95, 96, 100–106, 158–161, 163
story related by 7, 92
SCOUT SONGS 152–154
SEED, distribution of, by Corn Priest 37
SEMITONES, tables showing average number of, in an interval 24, 29, 183
SERENADES—
of Buffalo Society 142
of Dog Society 135, 136
of Foolish Dog Society 129–132
of Fox Society 125
of Stone Hammer Society 116, 117, 118
of Young Dog Society 129
singing of 112
SHELL, POLISHED—
ceremonial use of 99, 100
song of 100, 105
SICK, music not used in treatment of 12
SIGNS USED XVI
SINGERS—
age of 1
characterization of 1–2
Hidatsa 2
Mandan 1–2
names of XVII–XVIII
SINGING, on the house tops 5
SIOUX—
killing of 158, 163–164
treaty with 12
See HUNKPAPA SIOUX; TETON SIOUX.
SIOUX SONGS, analysis of 16–26
SITTING CROW—
flageolet discussed by 10–11
information furnished by 109
SITTING RABBIT—
information furnished by 97
songs recorded by 52, 107, 125, 126, 129
SKULLS OF CHIEFS, beneficent influence of 38
SKUNK, song of the 93
SKUNK SOCIETY—
age of members of 94
song of 95
SLOVAK SONGS, reference to 22
SNAKE, song of 73
SOCIETIES—
boy's admission to 110
Hidatsa, list of XIX–XX
Mandan, list of XIX
men's 108–144
women's 94–107
SOLDIER SOCIETY—
facial painting of 9
war pipe of 9
SONGS—
as personal possessions 53, 54
beginning and ending of 27
characteristics of 14, 32, 33
connected with eagle catching 32, 70–80
from supernatural beings 1, 2
of Buffalo Society 33
SONGS—Continued. Page.
of Dog Society 33
of Fox Society 33
of Goose Women Society 42–46
of Horse Society 143–144
of legends and folk tales 32
of Mandan women's societies 32
of societies organized by Good Fur Robe. 32
of Spirit Women 100–105
of Stone Hammer Society 33
of the gardens 32
purchase of 110
society, classes of 112
SPIDER WOMAN, mention of 41
SPIRIT WOMEN—
songs of 100–105
story of 97–99
SQUASH, drying of 4
STANDLEY, PAUL C., acknowledgment to 64
STARS, used in decoration 115–116
STEALING RAIDS OF STONE HAMMER SOCIETY. 109, 113–115
STONE HAMMER SOCIETY—
age of members 113
an Hidatsa age society 108
derivation of the name 108
food stolen by 109, 110
Hidatsa name for 113
not found among Mandan 113
purchase of membership in 113
purpose of 113
raid of 113–115
songs of 116–121
wand of 115–116
STORY-TELLING—
payment for 64
time for 84
STRUCTURE OF SONGS, tables showing 22, 28, 182
SUMMARY OF ANALYSES 31, 33
SUPERNATURAL BEINGS, songs received from. 12
SUPERNATURAL POWER, words denoting 36
SWAN, song of 79
SWEAT LODGE—
of Old Dog 2
song when making 75
SWINGING CORN, a mythical woman 35
SYNCOPATIONS, use of 14, 31, 42
TERMINOLOGY, purpose of 30
TETON SIOUX, as enemy 167
TIME, tables showing change of 25, 30, 183
TONALITY, tables showing 16, 27, 178
TONE MATERIAL, table showing 19–20, 28, 180–181
TORTURE, SELF-INFLICTED, for success in eagle catching 63
TRADITIONS OF BLACK MOUTH SOCIETY 47, 49
TRANCE OF THE GOOSE WOMEN 43, 45
TRANSLATIONS, ERRONEOUS 108, 109, 147
TREATIES OF THE MANDAN 11, 12
TURTLE SHELL, drums of 8
TURTLE, SNAPPING, Mandan name for 89
TURTLE WHO WENT TO WAR—
song of 90
story of 89
TWINE, song concerning 80
UNITED STATES, dealings of, with Mandan and Hidatsa 11
UTE SONGS, analysis of 16–26

Page.

VILLAGE, MANDAN, described 4–5
VOCABULARIES, Mandan 6
WAND OF STONE HAMMER SOCIETY 115–116
WAR PARTY—
organization of 144
song when organizing 146
WAR PIPES 9
See WHISTLES.
WAR SONGS 144–170
characteristics of 33
of FOX Society 122, 124
WATER CHIEF—
a leading Mandan 61, 64
death of 1
WATERFOWL, as symbols of grain 41
WHISTLES 9–10, 112
WHITE SOCIETY, a Mandan society 108
WIDOW, songs of 56, 57
WILKINSON, MAHLON, report of, on Fort Berthold Indians 11
WILSON, DR. GILBERT L., information furnished by 35
WOLF, song given by 148, 149

Page.

WOLF GHOST, song recorded by 152
WOLF HEAD—
songs recorded by 90, 92, 158, 170, 171
tales related by 84, 89, 90–91, 92
WOLVERINE, use of word, by author 60
WOLVERINE, LITTLE, song of 77
WOMEN—
game played by 81
Mandan, societies of 94–107
work of 52
WOUNDED FACE—
a Mandan singer 1
legend related by 41
mention of 13, 47, 49
rattle owned by 9
songs recorded by 49, 50, 137, 154, 166
YELLOW HAIR, the wife of Butterfly 59
song recorded by 60
YOUNG DOG, a Mandan society 108
ceremony of 111
gifts to 111
song of 129
See DOG SOCIETY.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES
3 9088 01421 8259